Axion_V

Integrated Access Control and Security Management System

USER MANUAL Version 2.48



Copyright and Trademarks

Copyright[©] 1995-2010 RBH Access Technologies Inc.

All rights reserved. Printed in Canada. No part of this book may be used or reproduced, or stored in any form by any means, without the prior written consent of RBH Access Technologies Inc.

RBH constantly seeks to innovate and improve on the functionality and reliability of the AxiomVTM system. Therefore, the information contained in this book is subject to change at any time, without notice. This book is provided *as is*, without warranty of any kind, either express or implied, including but not limited to performance, merchantability, or fitness for any particular purpose. Neither RBH Access Technologies Inc. nor its dealers, distributors, or affiliates shall be liable to any person or entity with respect to any liability, loss, or damage caused or alleged to have been caused directly or indirectly by the AxiomVTM system.

AxiomV[™] is the trademark of RBH Access Technologies Inc.

RBH ACCESS TECHNOLOGIES INC.

2 Automatic Road, Suite 108 Brampton, Ontario CANADA L6S 6K8

Printing Date 11 August 2010

Table of Contents

About This Guide	.1
Before reading this guide	.1
Conventions in this guide	.2
PART 1	
Chapter 1 Introducing AxiomV TM	.4
PART 2	6
CHAPTER 2 BEFORE INSTALLING AXIOMV TM	.7
PC Requirements	.7
Server	.7
Client	.7
LAN Communications	.8
Server to Client	8
Before You Install AxiomV TM	.8
Installing AxiomV [™] on Your Computer	.8
Removing AxiomV TM from Your Computer	
Upgrading AxiomV TM	
License Registration	
PART 3	
CHAPTER 3 GETTING TO KNOW AXIOMV TM	
Data Entry and Navigation Objects	
General Screen Operations	
Search Window	
General	
Advanced	
Commands	
Event Viewer and System Status Displays	
Events Viewer	
System Status Display	
CHAPTER 4 CONCEPTS	
Access Control	
Access Level	
Access Point	
Antipassback (APB)	
Hard and Soft Antipassback	
Timed Antipassback	
*	20
Area Antipassback	20
Global Antipassback	
Example	
Area	
C-NET Controller Network	
Connection Types	
D-NET Device Network	
Holidays	
IOC16 Input/Output Controller	
NC100 Network Controller	
RC2 Reader Controller	
Schedules	
PART 4	
CHAPTER 5 MONITORING SECURITY ACCESS	

AxiomV™ User's Guide

Client Screen	
Menus and Toolbars	
Menus	
Toolbars	
Module Selector	
Status Bar	
Events Viewer	
Event Viewer Commands	
System Status Pane	
System Status Commands Menus	
Cards Monitor	
Alarms Monitor	
Standard Commands	
Maps Display	
CHAPTER 6 SYSTEM STATUS	
Networks	
Networks	
NC100s	
NC100s	
Device Controllers	
Devices	
Access Points	
AccessPoints	
Inputs	
Inputs	
Outputs	
Outputs	
Apartments	
Apartments	
Access Point Groups	
AccessPoint Groups	
Input Groups	
Input Groups	
Output Groups	
Output Groups	
Guard Tours	
Guard Tours	
Refresh	
Refresh	
PART 5	
CHAPTER 7 DATABASE	
Operator Profiles	
· ·	
Devices	
Cardholders	
System Messages	
Modules	
Commands	
Operators	
Holidays	
Schedules	
Schedule Tips	
Schedule Operation During Panel Reset	
Schedules That Span Midnight	
AxiomV™ User's Guide	RBH Access Technologies Inc.

24 Hour "On" Schedules	
Duplicate Start Time or End Time Entries	
Areas	
Messages	
Hardware Setup	
Networks	
Network Properties	
NC100s	
NC100 Properties	
RC2s	
RC2 Properties	
IOC16s	
IOC16 Properties	
Keypads	
Keypad Properties	
Access Points	
Access Point Properties	
Inputs	
Input Properties	
Outputs	
Output Properties	
Non Reader Access Points	
Non Reader Access Point Properties	
Elevators	
Floor Groups	
AccessPoint Groups	
Input Groups	
Output Groups	
Interlock Groups	
Access Levels	
General (Standard Access Levels)	
General (Multiple Access Levels)	
Elevator	
Finger Print Readers	
Finger Print Reader Query	
Departments	
Companies	
Assets	
Add an Asset	
Cardholder	
Cardholder Screen	
Cardholder General Tab (Special Access Levels)	
Cardholder General Tab (Multiple Access Levels)	
Cardholder Personal Tab	
Cardholder Options Tab	
Cardholder Code Links Tab	
Cardholder Code Links Tab	
Cardholder Photo Tab	
Cardholder Type	
Asset Tracking	
Asset Configuration	
Reader Access	
Cardholder Reader Access Update	
Access Technologies Inc.	AxiomV™ User's G

Visitor Management	
Visitors	
General	
Assets	
Track	
Photo	
Company	
Custom Fields	
$AxiomLinks^{TM}$	
General	
Pending Commands	
AxiomLinks [™] Command Summary	
Global Commands	
Facility Codes	
Message Ports	
DVR	
Guard Tour	
Tour Route	
Guard Groups	
Guard Tour	
CHAPTER 8 REPORTS	
Event History Reports	
Starting the History Report Maker:	
General	
Date and Time Selector	
Messages	
Sorting	
Save	
Fonts	
Database Reports	
Starting Database Report Designer	
General	
Sorting	
Readers	
Custom Report Designer	
Custom Database Fields	
Customize Report	
Printer Setup	
Sample Report	
PART 6	
APPENDIX A	
Asset Tracking	
Operation Scenarios	
Functionality	
Programming	
APPENDIX B	
Active Directory Setup	
GLOSSARY	
GLOSSARY LICENSE & WARRANTY	
LICENSE & WARKANTY	
INDEA	
NEADEN VUIVIIVIEN 13	

RBH Access Technologies Inc.

About This Guide

This guide documents how to install and use the AxiomVTM Integrated Access Control and Security Management System as developed by RBH Access Technologies Inc. AxiomVTM is an innovative security access control application that manages and monitors all your security access needs.

Read this guide if you are:

- an operator who monitors security accesses using AxiomVTM.
- a system administrator who updates AxiomV's[™] database.
- the system engineers whom installs and configures AxiomVTM onsite.

Before reading this guide

This guide assumes that you:

- are familiar and comfortable with a personal computer.
- know how to use a mouse.
- are familiar with the Windows operating environment.

Part 1	Read Part 1 for an introduction to AxiomV TM .
Part 2	Read Part 2 for information on how to install and setup AxiomV TM . <i>Part 2</i> is intended for the installing Dealer.
Part 3	Read Part 3 to get to know AxiomV TM . Learn about the basic concepts of access control. <i>Part 3</i> will explain portions of the system that are common throughout. This part is intended for everyone that uses the system.
Part 4	Read Part 4 for information on monitoring and operator control. Learn about the monitoring of the status for items in the system and how to send commands to those items. <i>Part 4</i> is intended for a system operator.
Part 5	Read Part 5 for information on how to perform administrative functions (i.e., add or update cardholder records in the AxiomV TM Database), and how to create and print reports. <i>Part 5</i> is intended for the administrator.
Part 6	Part 6 includes Appendixes, Glossary, License & Warranty, and Reader Comments.

Conventions in this guide

Menu options, window titles, fields, and buttons are indicated by *italic typeface*. For example, "choose *Computer Config* from the *System* menu" or "click *Cancel* to cancel your changes".

Keyboard actions and function keys are denoted by **bold typeface**. For example, "press **F1** to display online help".

Keyboard control sequences (i.e., using two or more keyboard keys in combination), are denoted by keys in **bold** typeface separated by a plus sign (+). For example, "press Ctrl + Alt + Delete to reboot the system".

Cross-references are displayed in blue, and will jump you to the associated or mentioned part of the manual. Click on the *cross-reference* when the curser changes to move to that place in the manual.

A section beginning with an arrow symbol indicates the start of a task or procedure. Following the introductory statement are step-by-step instructions necessary to complete the procedure.

<u>C</u>

A section that begins with a pencil symbol indicates special information of which you may want to take additional notice.

A section that begins with a hand symbol indicates cautionary information.



A section that begins with a bomb symbol indicates warning information.

Part 1

Chapter 1 Introducing AxiomV™

Welcome to AxiomVTM, an innovative security access control application that manages and monitors all your security access needs.

AxiomVTM combines access control, building management, and security monitoring in a highly integrated and expandable system. AxiomVTM runs on a standard IBM compatible PC using Windows 2000, XP, or 2003 Server and is designed for use in installations ranging from simple two door systems to complex systems covering multiple sites and containing thousands of card readers and tens of thousands of card holders. Remote sites are linked to the system via high-speed networks.

The system can monitor over 1000 networked controller units (NC100) with each controller capable of monitoring 8 card readers and 320 input/output points. Remote site monitoring capability is 4,096 readers and 65,535 input/output points. Local site capacity exceeds 8,000 readers and 250,000 input/output points. A minimum configuration consists of a PC, a single controller unit (NC100) and a single reader controller (RC2) that allows connection of two card readers, eight inputs, and eight outputs.

A standard PC is used for system configuration, set up and maintenance of the cardholder database, and monitoring activity on the system. Once the database is downloaded to the controllers, the PC is not required for system operation. Should the PC be powered down, the NC100 Controller will perform all access and other control functions, including logging up to 100,000 events. When the connection is restored, the log is reported to the PC.

The security features of AxiomV[™] are extensive and are presented in the familiar Windows NT User Manager format. The system database can be separated into "logical sites" each with full security regarding operator access to system messages, configuration and administration modules, cardholder records and field devices such as controllers, access points etc. Only authorized operators can view events or issue commands for sensitive logical sites.

The open system architecture utilized by AxiomVTM is extremely powerful, flexible, and scalable. New devices developed for the system will be compatible with existing network devices, ensuring extended possibilities for system upgrading and expansion.

AxiomVTM provides extensive programming options for all aspects of system operation and configuration. This is achieved without adding unnecessary complexity to the setup procedure. Less frequently used options are placed in advanced screens. The majority of installations can use the default settings for quick and effective implementation.

AxiomVTM supports <u>networked PC</u> operation with TCP/IP protocol over Ethernet. A networked system is usually required by very large installations where several operators monitor and control the system.

One of the most powerful features of AxiomVTM is <u>AxiomLinksTM</u>, which allows the operation of the system to be tailored to meet the requirements of a particular installation. <u>AxiomLinksTM</u> is essentially a mini programming language that provides for commands to control system inputs, outputs, and access points. A major application of <u>AxiomLinksTM</u> is in building management.

AxiomVTM provides extensive elevator control features, allowing control of any building elevator setup. The elevator control board provides fail-safe operation with fire alarm input. Telecommunications interfaces include modems for remote site monitoring and paging system interface for paging on site security guards or service personnel.

Comprehensive event handling and logging combined with customizable history and system reports making recording and examining system information a simple task. The AxiomVTM system can easily be customized with .wav audio files that sound in association with the logging of system messages and presentation of alarms for operator action. In addition users may customize the icons used to represent field devices and their present status on all map display screens.

AxiomVTM handles all alarm events quickly and presents them to the operator in an informative and easy to understand way. Customizable operator instructions are displayed telling the operator how to handle the alarm and what action to take. Additionally, graphics maps display the exact location of the alarm and an on map icon shows the type of alarm. AxiomVTM provides you with unparalleled power and flexibility, thoughtfully designed into a package that is easy to use for users and installers alike.

This innovative system supports Microsoft SQL Server and MSDE. The client server database is more powerful then file databases, providing the system with even more flexibility.

Part 2

Chapter 2 Before Installing AxiomV™

.

This chapter describes considerations that should be addressed before installation of AxiomVTM by an authorized dealer of RBH Access Technologies Inc.

PC Requirements

Before you install AxiomVTM, make sure that your computer's configuration meets the following **minimum** requirements:

Server

Requirement	Description	
Operating system	Microsoft Windows 2000 ¹ , XP ² , Server 2003 or Vista ³	
Microprocessor	Pentium IV 1.0GHz	
Memory	512Mb (minimum), 1024Mb (recommended)	
Hard disk space	1Gb (Installation), 10Gb free space (to run)	

Client

Requirement	Description	
Operating system	Microsoft Windows, 2000 ⁴ , XP ⁵ , Server 2003, or Vista ⁶	
Microprocessor	Pentium IV 1.0GHz	
Memory	512Mb (minimum), 1024Mb (recommended)	
Hard disk space	50Mb (Installation)	

¹ Must have at least service pack 4 installed.

² Must have at least service pack 1 installed.

³ Vista does not support MSDE which is required for AxiomVTM Professional, AxiomVTM Enterprise also requires SQL Server 2005.

⁴ Must have at least service pack 4 installed.

⁵ Must have at least service pack 1 installed.

⁶ Vista does not support MSDE which is required for AxiomVTM Professional, AxiomVTM Enterprise also requires SQL Server 2005.

LAN Communications

Server to Client

Ensure that the following services have been setup:

- Microsoft's standard networking services under Control Panel / Network.
- Network Card with Microsoft TCP/IP protocol under Network Neighborhood.

Before You Install AxiomV[™]

Before you install AxiomVTM application software, ensure that you have done the following:

- 1. You have installed and connected all hardware as described in the AxiomVTM Hardware Installation Manual.
- 2. Your computer meets the requirements listed in the table in *Computer Requirements*.

Installing AxiomV[™] on Your Computer

See Technical Bulletin 'TB49_AxiomV Install-Uninstall' for installation information.

Removing AxiomV[™] from Your Computer

See Technical Bulletin '*TB49_AxiomV Install-Uninstall*' for information on removing AxiomVTM.

Upgrading AxiomV[™]

See the Technical Bulletin 'TB37_AxiomVUpgrade38' and 'TB43_AxiomVUpgrade'.

AxiomV™ User's Guide

License Registration

There are optional modules for the AxiomTM system that require the purchase and installation of a license for them to work. They are: Alternate Master NC100, Asset Tracking, Badging, Card Import Utility, Customize Report Designer, Guard Tour, and History Report Scheduler. To register your license, follow the procedure below.

Copy the license file [License.Bin] onto your hard drive from the installation CD. It may be a good idea to copy the folder it is in as well.

From the 'bin' folder of AxiomVTM run the executable file Axiomreg.exe.



Browse For Folder	<u>?×</u>
NetMeeting	
Outlook Express	
📄 📄 💼 rbh	
🕀 💼 🔁 Axiom 37	
庄 💼 Axiom 38	
🖻 💼 AxiomV	
bin	
🕀 🗇 Data	
Ent with Asset and Import	
Shared	
	•
OK Cancel <u>N</u> ew Fo	lder

Browse the path to the folder the License.Bin is located in. Click *OK*.

Type in the 'Company Name' for the license. (The same name as the folder the License.Bin file is in on the CD). Ensure the name is spelled exactly the same as it is on the CD. The name <u>is</u> case sensitive.

Axiom Product Registration
En Destitution Contact -
For Registration Contact : Your Supplier OR
RBH Access Technologies
Phone - 905 - 790 1515 OR
Fax - 905 - 790 3680 OR Email - MJanda@rbh-access.com
Include the company name (case sensitive) to be associated with registration request.
Registration file path (License.Bin)
C:\Program Files\rbh\AxiomV\Ent with Asset and Import
Company Name
Ent with Asset and Import
Unregister

Click *Register* to complete the registration.

Part 3

Chapter 3 Getting to Know AxiomV™

AxiomVTM lets you manage and monitor all your security access needs with a standard PC (stand alone or over a network). The client screen is customizable to better suit the user. Therefore AxiomVTM can look different on other client machines, but will have the same powerful capabilities.

Data Entry and Navigation Objects

This section describes Data Entry and Navigation conventions used throughout the AxiomVTM software package. Some of these tools include:

- Spin buttons.
- Number & name object.
- Search object.
- *Search* pop-up window.
- Date fields.
- Time group object.

-	Stealth Mode		
	0		

The *Number & Name* object combines the following three elements, related to a common subject:

Number field

The *Number* field displays the number that identifies the item. The number is system-generated. When you add a new record to the database, the system automatically enters the next available number to identify the device or item.

Name field

The *Name* field displays a descriptive name for the item or object you are currently displaying or defining.

Browse button

The *Browse* button lets you display a list of all valid entries for the current field. When you click the *browse* button it displays the *Select* pop-up.

*	Use <i>Spin</i> buttons to increase or decrease the value in the adjoining box.
	The <i>Search</i> object. Use the arrows to locate the first, previous, next, or last record.
Trace this cardIgnore Antipassback	<i>Check</i> box. A <i>checkbox</i> that contains a check mark is active; any function associated with the check box is selected. An empty checkbox is inactive.
 Run Now Configure Auto-Backup 	<i>Radio</i> button. A <i>radio</i> button allows you to select a single option from a group of options. Only one object can be selected at a time. Selecting a second object removes the selection from the previously selected object.
Activation Date	<i>Date</i> field. AxiomV TM uses the date format selected in the Windows operating system under <i>Control Panel – Regional Settings</i> . Dates can be either typed in or selected from the pull down calendar.
Status Active	<i>List box.</i> A <i>list box</i> provides a selection list where the number of options is small and fixed. An entry can be selected from the list or typed in if the desired entry is not on the list.
<u>S</u> elect	<i>Push</i> buttons. <i>Push</i> buttons perform the action named in the button itself, such as <u>open</u> another window or <u>insert</u> a line, etc.

General Screen Operations

Data entry windows in the database have the following controls attached, and operate in a similar manner.



New adds a new record.

Edit allows changes to be made to the current record. When Edit is selected, the button changes to Save, and should be clicked in order to Save the changes.



The Cancel button exits a window without saving changes or returning a selection.



Delete or Remove the current or selected record. A popup

dialog box will request confirmation before deleting the record.



Copy the selections from the current record, to a new record in the same file. This record may then be renamed, edited and saved. Also see the *Copy Wizard* on page 51 of Chapter 5.



Find a particular record. Opens the search window. (See below for more details.)



View will display a report that can be viewed, printed, or exported.



Print will have the currently selected item printed.



Printer Setup is used to edit the printer's parameters.



Remove will delete the selected item only.

The three dot *Browse* button will allow you to look for the desired item anywhere you have permission to on the network.



...

Open will bring up a list of previously saved items to select from and open.



Paste will apply the data previously saved by *Copy*.



Click *OK* to exit and save any changes that were made.

Cancel Click *Cancel* to exit and not save any changes that were made.





Click *Next>>* to go on to the next screen.



Click *<<Back* to go back to the previous screen.



Number of records will show the number of the record being viewed and how many records there are.

Last will go to the last record.



Next will go to the next record.



Previous will go to the previous record.





Search Window

General

📇 Search Device		×
General Advance		
Search Field Description Search Text [All Selected]	· •	
Partial Search	Search Cancel	

Search Field

Select the field to be searched. The choices will vary depending on where the search was initiated. Searching under networks will have different fields then searching under access points.

Search Text

Either select from the provided pull down list or enter in your own criteria for the search.

☑ Partial Search

A partial search will look for the text anywhere within the field (e.g. "net" will find "direct network"). For an exact search uncheck *Partial Search*.

Search

Search

Click the *Search* button to execute a search based on the parameters set in *Search Field* and *Search Text*.

Advanced

Value			
Network 2 (TCP/IP	AND		
General Purpose	OR		
Network 3 (TCP/IP	AND		
General Purpose			
			Search
	Network 2 (TCP/IP General Purpose Network 3 (TCP/IP	Network 2 (TCP/IP AND General Purpose OR Network 3 (TCP/IP AND	Network 2 (TCP/IP AND General Purpose OR Network 3 (TCP/IP AND

The *Advanced* search tab is used to create custom searches. Choose the parameters for each *Field* to customize the search for your individual needs.

Field	Condition	Value	
Description			-
Description	=		AND
NC100 Name	<>		OR
Device Name	Like		
Input Type Network Name			
Network Name			

Commands

Commands can be issued by the operator (user) or by the system itself (links, schedules). There are three types of commands, Permanent, Semi-Permanent, and Timed.



Permanent Commands are commands that can only be overridden by operator commands or by other permanent commands. These commands are usually used when it is important that the command is not countermanded by a schedule or a link.

Semi-permanent 👘 🔻

Semi-Permanent Commands are the most common command type. Any other command issued after a *Semi-Permanent Commands* is valid regardless of the type or source.



Timed Commands are execute like *Semi-Permanent Commands* except for the timer of course. The timer starts at the same time the command is issued. When the timer expires the system checks the item's schedule to verify what the item's status should be, and sets the item to that status.

Example: An access point has an unlock schedule of 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Monday to Friday. At 4:55 p.m. the access point is given a timed command to lock for ten minutes. The access point unlocks immediately and the timer runs for ten minutes. When the timer expires at 5:05 p.m. the door remains locked since the unlock schedule has turned off.

Event Viewer and System Status Displays

Events Viewer

Clicking on a header will cause the messages in the viewer to be sorted by that header. Consecutive clicks will toggle the sort between ascending and descending. A selected header will be indicated by a triangle ($\blacktriangle \nabla$) that will show the direction of the sort.

25/06/2003 11:21:15 AM Access granted: request RC2\Reader1 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:15 AM Output: on RC2\Reader1 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:15 AM Input: restore RC2\Reader1 Door Contact 25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Input: normal RC2\Reader1 Door Contact 25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Output: off RC2\Reader1 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Output: off RC2\Reader1 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Access granted: reader RC2\Reader2 (22700) 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: off RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Lock	Date		Message	Device	Cardholder	-
25/06/2003 11:21:15 AM Input: restore RC2\Reader1 RTE 25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Input: abnormal RC2\Reader1 Door Contact 25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Input: normal RC2\Reader1 Door Contact 25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Output: off RC2\Reader1 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Output: off RC2\Reader1 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Access granted: reader RC2\Reader2 (22700) 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Door not open alarm RC2\Reader2 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Output: off RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt	25/06/2003 11:21:1	5 AM	Access granted: request	RC2\Reader1		
25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Input: abnormal RC2\Reader1 Door Contact 25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Input: normal RC2\Reader1 Door Contact 25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Output: off RC2\Reader1 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Output: off RC2\Reader1 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Access granted: reader RC2\Reader2 (22700) 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Door not open alarm RC2\Reader2 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Output: off RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt	25/06/2003 11:21:1	5 AM	Output: on	RC2\Reader1Lock		
25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Input: normal RC2\Reader1 Door Contact 25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Output: off RC2\Reader1 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Output: off RC2\Reader1 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Access granted: reader RC2\Reader2 (22700) 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Door not open alarm RC2\Reader2 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Output: off RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt	25/06/2003 11:21:1	5 AM	Input: restore	RC2\Reader1 RTE		
25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Output: off RC2\Reader1 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Output: off RC2\Reader1 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Access granted: reader RC2\Reader2 (22700) 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Door not open alarm RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Output: off RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt	25/06/2003 11:21:1	6 AM	Input: abnormal	RC2\Reader1 Door Contact		
25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM Output: off RC2\Reader1 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Access granted: reader RC2\Reader2 (22700) 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Door not open alarm RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Output: off RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt	25/06/2003 11:21:1	6 AM	Input: normal	RC2\Reader1 Door Contact		
25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Access granted: reader RC2\Reader2 (22700) 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Door not open alarm RC2\Reader2 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Output: off RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt	25/06/2003 11:21:1	6 AM	Output: off	RC2\Reader1Lock		
25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt 25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM Output: on RC2\Reader2 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Door not open alarm RC2\Reader2 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Output: off RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt	25/06/2003 11:21:1	6 AM	Output: off	RC2\Reader1 Alarm Shunt		
25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM_Output: on RC2\Reader2 Lock 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM_Door not open alarm RC2\Reader2 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM_Output: off RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt	25/06/2003 11:21:3	4 AM	Access granted: reader	RC2\Reader2	(22700)	
25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Door not open alarm RC2\Reader2 25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Output: off RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt	25/06/2003 11:21:3	4 AM	Output: on	RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt		
25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM Output: off RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt	25/06/2003 11:21:3	4 AM	Output: on	RC2\Reader2 Lock		
	25/06/2003 11:21:4	3 AM	Door not open alarm	RC2\Reader2		
25/06/2003 11:21:44 AM_Output: off RC2\Reader2 Lock	25/06/2003 11:21:4	3 AM	Output: off	RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt		
	25/06/2003 11:21:4	4 AM	Output: off	RC2\Reader2 Lock		-

System Status Display

Clicking and dragging a header can change the order of columns to suit the operator. The header names will change depending on the data being displayed.



This is the end of the overview for AxiomVTM Monitor. Once you have read and become familiar with the general features and environment of AxiomVTM, proceed to:

Part 4 for information on how to monitor security access with AxiomVTM Monitor and System Status.

Part 5 for information on how to use and set up the AxiomVTM Database.

This chapter describes many security access concepts used in AxiomVTM.

Access Control

A method of controlling entry and exit to protected areas.

Access Level

Each cardholder is assigned an access level that determines where the cardholder is allowed access and when the access is allowed. For example, an access level assigned to cardholders working in the warehouse would only allow access to the warehouse area form Monday to Friday and from 8 a.m. to 5 p.m.

Access Point

An access point is a point of entry or exit, such as a door, whose access is controlled and monitored by AxiomVTM.

Antipassback (APB)

Antipassback is an access control feature that prevents cardholder misuse, by putting certain restrictions on the use of their cards. When the Antipassback feature is enabled, cardholders are restrictions from re-entering an Area until they have exited that Area.

Each AxiomVTM cardholder record in the database has two fields for area tracking – one for the last APB Area entered, and one for the Current Area, which may or may not be an APB area. If the last reader that a cardholder used was an APB reader, then both fields will contain the entering area of that Access Point record. If the last reader was not an APB reader, but had an entering area assigned, then the Current Area field will contain the entering area for that Access Point and the APB Area will contain the entering area for that Access Point and the APB Area will contain the entering area for the tast APB reader used.

Hard and Soft Antipassback

Hard Antipassback does not allow access to be granted if the antipassback criterion is violated. *Soft Antipassback* does allow access if the antipassback criteria is violated but posts the message "Access Granted Antipassback Reader" to signify that a violation has occurred. Generally *Soft Antipassback* is only used during a training period before *Hard Antipassback* is enabled.

Timed Antipassback

Timed Antipassback resets the area of the cardholder after a specified time delay. This is used in applications where the cardholder reads their card to get in but uses a Request-to-Exit device to get out. The time delay is settable for each access point from 1 to 127 seconds or minutes.

Reader Antipassback

For *Reader APB*, the reader's *Entering Area* in the *Access Point* configuration record is compared with the *Current Area* of the cardholder as recorded in the AxiomVTM database. If they match, a *Reader APB* violation exists. In short, *Reader APB* is only concerned with the area the cardholder is moving into, and restricts the cardholder from re-entering the area without first reading into another area.

Area Antipassback

Area APB is more restrictive then Reader APB. In addition to the Reader APB check outlined above, the system also performs a check on the exiting area in the Access Point configuration record. First the system checks that the *Entering Area* and the *Current Area* are not the same. Then the system checks to see that the *Exiting Area* and the *Current Area* are the same. Antipassback is violated if either check fails. Area Antipassback not only checks to see if the cardholder is trying to enter the Area that they are already in, but also checks to see if the cardholder is trying to leave an Area that they are not in. This higher level of antipassback is mostly used in applications with Areas inside of other Areas.

Global Antipassback

When antipassback is enabled it functions within a network since networks don't communicate to each other while panels within a network do. Checking 'Required PC Decision' with antipassback enabled means that the AxiomVTM software will control antipassback for the site and that antipassback can function across networks. This will be true as long as the AxiomVTM server is running.

Example

In the diagram below, there are four areas numbered 1-4 all programmed as antipassback areas. Each door to each area has two card readers: A and B. All readers are set for hard antipassback, and each access point has both its entering area and its exiting area defined. This establishes the cardholder flow for area to area.



Let's say John enters Area 2 from Area 1. Once John is in Area 2, his card allows him to:

Exit Area 2 to Area 1.

Exit Area 2 to Area 3.

While in Area 2, if John were to pass his card back to someone in Area 1, the card does not allow access to Area 2 because the cardholder location has been recorded as Area 2, and therefore Area 2 cannot be re-entered. In addition, if John were to follow someone into Area 3 without presenting his card, he could not gain access to Area 4 because his cardholder location has been recorded as Area 2, which is not connected to Area 4. He would not be exiting Area 2 when trying to enter Area 4.

Area

A predefined physical location such as warehouse or office, with entry and exit through *access points* controlled and monitored by AxiomVTM.

C-NET Controller Network

The C-Net is the communications network that links NC100 controllers together. Each C-Net can support up to fifteen NC100 controllers.

Connection Types

Direct connection – the controller network (C-NET) is connected directly to the PC serial port via RS232 or RS485.

Ethernet connection – the controller network (C-NET) is connected directly to a 10 Base-T Ethernet network running Windows on the server.

D-NET Device Network

The D-Net is the communications network that links card reader controllers (RC2) and input/output controllers (IOC16) to the NC100 controllers in the C-NET. Up to four RC2s and sixteen IOC16s can be connected to a single NC100 controller.

Holidays

The operation of the scheduler can be programmed to take special action on holidays. The system supports two different holiday types for added flexibility.

On a holiday, *Time Groups* follow the time schedule assigned to the holiday and ignore the normal day of the week time group parameters. All time groups have a nine-day schedule, with the eighth and ninth day designated as the H1 (holiday type 1) and H2 (holiday type 2) days.

IOC16 Input/Output Controller

The IOC16 supports sixteen points, each of which is programmable as an input or a relay output.

NC100 Network Controller

The NC100 is the main controller in the system and stores all information required for local access control functions. Each NC100 is capable of monitoring eight readers (four - RC2 controllers) and sixteen IOC16 input/output controllers over its D-Net.

RC2 Reader Controller

The RC2 connects to the NC100 on the D-Net and supports two readers (PIN pad and/or card reader) as well as eight inputs and eight outputs.

Schedules

Most functions in an access system are affected by Time, which may be the time of day, the day of the week, or the day of the month. A *Schedule* (e.g., Business Hours) is a window during which specific activity occurs in predefined time and day combinations. As an example you want to define Business Hours during 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Monday through Friday, plus 11:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Saturday and Sunday, excluding Holidays. This predefined window is a schedule.

G	Schedules											_ 🗆	×
1	🎦 New 📑 Edit 🕫 Cancel 🗙 Delete 🗈 Copy 👫 Eind 🗐 View												
N	Name												
	Business Hou	'S											
Г		,	,										
		Start	End	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	H 1	H 2	
	Period 1:	0800	1700		√	V	1	V	V				
	Period 2:	1100	1700	1						1			
	Ports L.D.												
1	Period 15:												
	Period 16:												
ŀ		1										▷ [×

Schedules may be used to control access point operation, input arming/disarming, output switching, and other system functions.

Part 4

Chapter 5 Monitoring Security Access

This chapter describes the operation of the AxiomVTM client screen. All functions of the system can be performed from the client screen (as long as the operator has permission). The client screen can be customized so that frequently used functions are easily accessed.

AxiomV Security System		
Eile View System Status	<u>D</u> atabase <u>T</u> ools <u>R</u> eports <u>H</u> elp	
Log Off		Display
) 🎕 🤰 🏂 🛞 🖪 鬥	🌇 🔔 📖 🐘 🚀 💯 🍘 🕲 🖀 🏦 🛍 🖾 🙈 🔪 🥔	👌 🎰 🗣 ,
System Status	Events Viewer	
	I	
Networks	Date Message	De
NELWOIKS	2010 Aug 9 10:32:26 Server online TESTING_11 (AxiomComm	nsServer)
NC100s		
Device Controllers		
Access Points		
Database	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Þ.
rbh	Loaded items: 1 2010 Aug	9 11:04

Client Screen

The client screen can be broken down into five separate areas:

- 1. The Menus and Toolbars.
- 2. The Module Selector.
- 3. The Status Bar.
- 4. The Events Viewer.
- 5. The System Status Pane.

The Alarm Monitor is an additional area that can be called up as required.

Menus and Toolbars

💮 AxiomV Security System							
<u>File V</u> iew Syste	m <u>S</u> tatus <u>D</u> ataba	se <u>T</u> ools <u>R</u> eport	ts <u>H</u> elp				
S	5	P	<u>₩</u>	5	0	-	
Log Off	Events Viewer	System S <u>t</u> atus	Alarms Monitor	<u>C</u> ards Monitor	Maps Display	<u>H</u> istory	-
🎕 🤰 🏦 🔇	🖪 🔛 🌄	🏨 🐘 🚀 🐲	🅦 🖏 🚼 🏭	🗊 🖭 🔔 🖎	, 🥔 🛅 📩 📼	h	•

Menus

File





Log In (Ctrl+L)

An operator must be logged in to operate the system. This ensures that all actions performed on the PC can be attributed to a particular operator.

Axiom¥ Sign In	
Axiom V Profession	al Edition
Login ID	
Password	
Data Server TESTINGSERVER2	•
	Cancel

To log in, enter your user name and password. Although the "Login Name" is not case sensitive the "Password" is case sensitive.

The default operator name is 'rbh' and the default password is 'password'. After you have the system up and running it is recommended that you change the default Operator ID and Password.

Log Off (Ctrl+L)

An operator should log out when leaving the computer unattended or when finished his/her shift. To log off, simply click the appropriate button or type **Ctrl+L**. A keyboard timeout can also be set, to automatically log out the user if there isn't any keyboard or mouse activity for the preset amount of time. Logging off protects the system against unauthorized access. AxiomVTM has a built-in *Default Account*, which activates whenever an operator logs out and forces events to be displayed and captured on the monitor screen. These messages will be available to the next operator that logs in.

Change Password

🗧 Operator Passwo	rd Change	×
Old Password		
New Password		
Confirm Password		
	OK Cancel	

Change Password allows an operator to change their password without them have to access *Operators* or *Operator Profiles* in the database. The current operator simply enters their existing password under *Old Password* then they enter a new password under both *New Password* and *Confirm Password*. Click *OK* to make the change.

System Settings...

General



Sounds:

 \blacksquare Alarm Sounds

 \blacksquare Log Sounds

Alarm, Log, and System sounds can be activated or deactivated as required. Alarm sounds will come from the PC speaker if there isn't a sound card installed in the machine. Log and System sounds are only played through the sound card and are used to help recognize particular messages as they come in.

Queue:

- Alarm Queue On
- ☑ Map Queue On

When the alarm queue is turned on the Alarm Monitor screen will be brought up whenever a new alarm comes in. The map queue will do the same for a specified map associated with the alarm.

Keyboard Timeout

Keyboard timeout is set in minutes and can either be typed in or scrolled to. The operator will be logged out at the end of the set time if there is no mouse or keyboard activity.

Display

System Settings	×				
General Display Badge System AP A	Activity Email Config				
Display Tables Gridlines Style None Text Style Flat © Standard Fonts © Large Fonts	Toolbars Style Office 2000 Text Options No text labels Active Toolbar				
Maximum Events Row Height Lock Alarms Monitor Window					
	Ok Cancel Apply				

Display Table:

Aesthetic setting for the tables are chosen here. Gridline Styles can be chosen as Raised, Inset, Flat, or None. Text Style can be Inset Light, Raised Light, Inset, Raised, or Flat. Font size can be either standard or large.

Toolbars:

The style of the toolbars can be Office97TM style, Office2000TM style, or OfficeXPTM style. All other examples in this manual are in Office2000 style. The examples below here are in OfficeXPTM style.


Ē	<u>F</u> ile	⊻iev	v System <u>S</u> tatus Datab	ase	<u>T</u> ools	<u>R</u> e	ports	Help
Ī		~	Module Selector		7			₩
Ē	L	~	Status <u>B</u> ar	yste	em S <u>t</u> at	us :	Alar	ms Monitor
		5	Events Viewer	Vie	wer			_
		Þ	System S <u>t</u> atus					Message
		5	<u>C</u> ards Monitor	20	03 9:1	6:5	5 AM	Output: o
		漢	Alarms Monitor	20	03 9:1	6:59	9 AM	Door not
		Θ	Maps Display					Output: o
			Access Point Activity	20	03 9:1			Output: o
				20	03 9:1	7:11	R AM	Access or

Text Options – This feature is not supported at this time.

 \square When *Active Toolbar* is selected the buttons on the toolbar are grayed out until the cursor is moved over them.

	3	v	÷	ŭ	. .
Log Off	/iewer Sys	tem S <u>t</u> atus	s Alarms	Monitor ns Monitor	Cards Monitor

 \square Gridlines in all Selection boxes.

Select if all Selection boxes are to have gridlines.

Maximum Events

How many lines of events are to be buffered for immediate viewing is set under Maximum Events. Type in or scroll to the desired value.

Row Height

Changes in Row Height will reflect in the Event Log, the Status Screen, and the message portion of the Access Point Activity Screen. Font size will also affect the same areas.

Lock Alarms Monitor Window

 \square The *Alarm Monitor Window* is a separate display that pops-up as required; selecting this feature will include it in the main screen.

Badge⁷

System S	ettings	×
General	Display Badge System AP Activity Email Config	
	Picture device type 💿 General 🔿 IP	
	Camera 1	
	Signature device	
	ePad-ink 💌	
	Fingerprint device	
	ZK	
	Save Files As	
	JPG 🔽	
	Printer Name	
	Fax	
	Duplex Badge Printing 🔲 Use Dazzle90 settings for photo capture	
	Magnetic Encoder Setup	
	Ok Cancel Apply	

Under the *Badge* tab is where devices associated with creating badges are selected. Cameras (or picture device) for acquiring the cardholder's picture are selected here. Devices for acquiring the cardholder's signature and/or fingerprint are also selected here. What format the picture is saved as, as well as which print to use. Check boxes are provided for selecting Duplex Badge Printing (printing on both sides of the card) and for users of the Dazzle90 photo capture device. Magnetic strip encoding can be set under the *Magnetic Encoder Setup*.

⁷ This selection is only available if the optional license for the Badging Software has been purchased and installed.

System

System Settings	×
General Display Badge System AP Act	ivity Email Config
Multiple Credentials	Send cleared alarms to message port
Restrict Duplicate Card PIN	Autogenerate Card number
Multiple Access Levels	Do not Initialize the panels
Print area muster report on this client	
🔲 Use Cardholder Initial Field as numeric o	data
Use Cardholder Initial Field as	Auto void cards after
	0 Days
Card Holder Picture Size (Millimeters)	Operator password expires after
Height 30 Width 23	0 Days
	Ok Cancel Apply

Multiple Credentials:

This feature allows a cardholder to have more than one card number. Look for the *Browse* button beside the card number box in the cardholder screen when this feature is checked

Restrict Duplicate Card PIN:

When checked this feature prevents cardholders from having the same PIN code. If it is left unchecked then multiple cardholders will be allowed to use the same PIN code.

Multiple Access Levels:

When checked this feature de-activates Special Access Levels and activates Multiple Access Levels. Special Access Levels allows you to customize the access of each cardholder while Multiple Access Levels allows you to give each cardholder one standard Access Level and up to ten multiple Access Levels (see *Access Levels* - General (Multiple Access Levels) for information on creating access levels).

Print Area Muster Report on This Client:

When checked this feature will print area muster reports on the client machine instead of at the server. These reports are generated by tripping a specified input for the area (see Areas).

☑ <u>Use Cardholder Initials Field as:</u>

Enter (type) a new label for the Initial Field in the cardholder screen to use this field for a different purpose.

☑ Send cleared alarms to message port:

Check this feature to send the alarm's ASCII message with the addition of "alarm cleared" to the alarm's message port.

Autogenerate Card Number:

When checked this feature will automatically enter a card number whenever a new cardholder is created. The number generated will be the next card number in sequence higher than the highest card number in the system.

☑ <u>Do not Initialize the panels:</u>

With this feature selected the operator will not be asked if they want the panels initialized or not, the panels will not be initialized. When the feature isn't selected the operator will be asked whether or not to initialize the panels.

Auto void cards after:

At 1:00 am cards that have not been used within the specified number of days will be automatically deactivated. No cards will be deactivated if the number of days is set to zero.

Card Holder Picture Size (Millimeters):

Type in here the desired Height and Width. This size is for the cardholder screen only and does not apply to the card template at all.

Operator password expires after

Set the number of days here, after which the operator's password will expire, if the value is zero the password will never expire. Users will be given chance to change their password when logging in, if the expired password is not changed then AxiomVTM will not start for that user. The new password cannot match the previous password.

AP Activity

System S	ettings	Ľ
General	Display Badge System AP Activity Email Config	
		1
Select	extra fields to display in access point activity window	Ш
#	Description	Ш
1.		Ш
2.		Ш
3.		Ш
4.		Ш
5.	<u> </u>	Ш
	Access Level	Ш
	Expiry Date	Ш
	Active Date	Ш
	Usage Count Department	Ш
	Card Type	Ш
	Escort Required	Ш
		Ш
	Ok Cancel Apply	╢
	Ok Cancel Apply	

Along with the Name of the Reader, the Name of the Cardholder, the Card Number, the Picture of the Cardholder, and the Access Point event message, you can select five fields of data that will be displayed on the Access Point Activity window.

eMail Config⁸

In *Visitor Management*, (see page 279 for more information on Visitor Management) email notification can be sent to the visiting cardholder. For this to work the senders email information must be configured in *eMail Config* under System settings.

System Settings		×
General Display Badge	System AP Activity Email Config	
	· · · ·	
Enter the Email Configura	tion.	
Sender Name		
Senders Email address		
SMTP Server		
	Send email as the visitor is checks in	
	Ok Cancel Apply	

Check the box **Send email as the visitor is checked in** to automatically send an email to the cardholder being visited as the visitor checks in. The being visited cardholder's *Personal Tab* also must have an email address.

Exit

Click here to end the AxiomV[™] session. The operator must be logged on in order to exit the system.

⁸ This tab is available only with Visitor Management option, which is licensed and need to be installed.



Module Selector

When the Module Selector is active the user may chose (by clicking) a database module or a System Status module. The database modules will open up a window for viewing or programming of the appropriate section of the database. The System Status modules will bring up a search window for item selection. These items will be displayed in the Status pane. (See page 128 for more information on *Module Selector*.)

Status Bar

The *Status Bar* at the bottom of the *Client* screen will be used in the future to display alarm counts. The name of the currently logged on operator is displayed here.



Events Viewer

The Event Viewer displays system and device messages. Which messages are displayed will depend on the policy of the logged in operator. The number of messages buffered for immediate recall can be set under the *Display* tab of *System Settings*. (See page 129 for more information on *Event Viewer*.)



System Status Pane

The System Status Pane will display the current status of the selected items. Right clicking on an item will bring up a menu. From this menu the operator could choose a command to execute or possibly they could make a programming selection. (See page 136 for more information on *System Status Pane*.)



Cards Monitor

The *Cards Monitor* window is used to display a list of cardholders and the area they are logged into. Operators can choose between displaying selected cardholders (and what area they are in) or selected areas (and which cardholders are in them). (See page 145 for more information on *Cards Monitor*.)



Alarms Monitor

The Alarm Monitor window is used to acknowledge and clear alarms. The operator can also get instructions on what to do about the alarm and enter what was actually done for each alarm event. (See page 146 for more information on *Alarms Monitor*.)

(F

Only the operator that acknowledged the alarm can clear the alarm.

5
1
\sim

Maps Display

Maps Display will provide a list of maps to choose from. These maps can display the status of different types of items (like inputs, outputs, and access points) at the same time. Maps are created in the *MapMaker* module (see page 56 for more information on *MapMaker*).



 \checkmark





The Access Point Activity Monitor is used to monitor one, four, or nine access points. All activity on the selected access point(s) will be shown on this screen, including the cardholder's name, card number, and picture. Five additional fields of data can also be displayed; as well the last ten access point events will be displayed. Once selected, this screen can be minimized. It will automatically 'pop-up' when an event occurs on a selected access point.

Grant Access

Click on this icon to grant access to the selected access point (highlighted).



Lock & Unlock

Use these icons to either lock or unlock the selected access point. These commands will be affected by the *permanent*, *semi-permanent*, or *timed* selection immediately to the right.

HQ.

Search

Use the Search icon to look for the access points to be monitored.

RB E

Card Search

An operator that doesn't have access to the cardholders in the database can use the Card Search icon to bring up information on a card number. Guards who don't have access to the cardholder database could use this to verify personnel by calling up the cardholder's information (including their picture) with a relatively quick search.

K Clear

Clear will remove an access point that is no longer needed.

Refresh

Refresh will update the status of the selected access point.



Select to view nine, four, or just one access point. You do not have to choose access points for all sections in the nine or quad view; some sections may be left unused.

X Access Point Activity Monitor			<u> </u>
🐺 🖪 🌄 Semi-permanent 💌	₩ № × 🗈 🗆 🖽		
Reader Reader 2 Direct Card Number 20945 Cardholder Name Victoria Greene Active Date 2-Nov-2005		Reader Reader 1 Direct Card Number 20941 Cardholder Name Sonia Durnst Active Date 2-Nov-2005	
Trace Card No		Trace Card No	
Usage Count 255		Usage Count 255	
Expiry Date		Expiry Date	
Access Level Master Access Le	vel	Access Level Master Access Level	
Access granted		Access granted	
Reader Reader 4 Direct Card Number Cardholder Name		Reader Reader 3 Direct Card Number Cardholder Name	
Card Holder	Message	Reader	Date
Victoria Greene (20945) Sonia Durnst (20941)	Access granted	Reader 2 Direct	2-Nov-2005 1
Jane Mumford (2375)	Access granted Access granted	Reader 1 Direct Reader 1 Direct	2-Nov-2005 1 2-Nov-2005 1

Quad View

\sim

Photo ID Event

Photo ID Event is similar to *Access Point Activity*. Both provide about the same information. *Access Point Activity* is a floating window that can be moved around the screen while *Photo ID Event* is fixed at the bottom of the screen.



Entries shift to the right (or down) as new entries come in.

	Settings				
	Horizontal				
	Vertical				
		Right click in the activities are	a to get the	menu sele	ection.
Re	ader 1	Frame Settings	Grid view	options	
Reader 2		Number of frames 6	• Fix ro	w height	
Reader 3				-	
Elevator		🔲 Display photo only	🔿 Resiz	able row hei	ght
RC\Reader 1					
RC\Reader 2		Border Style	Corientation	n	
🗆 Ex	it Door `A`				
Exit Door `B`		C None	O Horiz	ontal	
		 Fixed 	⊖ Vertic	al	
	Readers			Save	Cancel

Click on *Readers* and check the reader you want displayed in the activities area. Select the number of frames required (the amount of traffic will likely determine how many frames you will want). The *Grid View Options* allows for the text row heights to be fixed or resizable, and therefore the text font to remain constant or adjust with the size of the activities area. *Border Style* selects either fixed (border) or none (no border). *Orientation* will put the activities area either at the bottom of the screen under *System Status* (Horizontal) or on the left side of the screen (vertical).

DVR

🖶 Axiom¥ D¥R 📃 🗆 🗙				
🎦 New 🍯 Edit 🗙 Delete	Connect			
Name	Address			
🗪 RBH Embedded DVR	125.100.75.225			

Axiom¥ D¥R Configuration	×
Name	
RBH Embedded DVR	
Make	
RBH-EMB-111	
Address	Port
125.100.75.225	0
	OK Cancel



New

Click *New* to configure a new DVR connection. Select a make from the pull down list and enter a name, the address, and a port number for this DVR.

b Edit

Clicking *Edit* will open the DVR configuration window to make changes or to just view the DVR configuration.

X. Delete

Use *Delete* to remove the highlighted DVR configuration record.

Connect

Click *Connect* to open a connection to the selected DVR.

If you get the message below then you have not yet installed the necessary driver file for that manufacturer's DVR.

AxiomDVR X
System not installed
ОК

For more information on the Axiom DVR integration; please refer to the document DVR Manual (AxiomVTM).

Status



Choices made here will have the same effect as choices made from the Module Selector.



Locations

Locations will display the selected Networks. (For more information see page 154.)

"⊊́∦	
1. ¹ . 1	

NC100s

NC100s will display the selected NC100 panels. (For more information see page 156.)



Device Controllers

Device Controllers will display the selected RC-s and IOC16s. (For more information see page 161.)



<u>A</u>ccess Points

Access Points will display the selected Access Points. (For more information see page 166.)



Inputs

Inputs will display the selected Inputs. (For more information see page 169.)



Outputs

Outputs will display the selected Outputs. (For more information see page 171.)



Apartments

Apartments will display the selected SafeSuiteTM apartments. (For more information see page 173.)



A<u>c</u>cess Point Groups

Access Point Groups will display the selected Access Point Groups. (For more information see page 177.)



In<u>p</u>ut Groups

Input Groups will display the selected Input Groups. (For more information see page 178.)



Output Groups

Output Groups will display the selected Output Groups. (For more information see page 180.)

Guard Tours

Guard Tours will display the selected Guard Tours. (For more information see page 181.)



Refresh

Refresh will query the selected items to update their status.

Database



Choices made here will have the same effect as choices made from the Module Selector.



Operator Profiles

Operator Profiles opens the *Operator Security Profiles* window for the management of the security profiles, for the operators. The abilities of the default or "Master Profile" cannot be changed although the name can be. (For more information on creating *Operator Profiles* see page 186.)

77

Operators

Operators will open the Operators window to enter new operators, change the profiles of existing operators, or view the profiles of existing operators. The default operator (rbh) will always have the default operator profile. Although the login ID, name, and language of the default operator may be changed it will always have full privileges. (For more information on creating see page 192.)



Holidays

Holidays will open the *Holidays* window to create new holidays, edit the existing holidays, or view existing holidays. (For more information on creating *Holidays* see page 194.)



Schedules

Schedules will open the *Schedules* window to create new schedules, edit the existing schedules, or view the time groups of existing schedules. (For more information on creating *Schedules* see page 196.)



Areas

Areas will open the *Areas* window to create new areas, edit the existing areas, or view the properties of existing areas. (For more information on creating *Areas* see page 201.)

×	Ĥ
=	7
يما	~

Messages

Messages will open the *Messages* window to create new messages, edit the existing messages, or view the properties of existing messages. (For more information on creating *Messages* see page 202.)



Hardware Setup

Hardware Setup will bring up the *Hardware Setup* tree view window. In this tree view the operator can manage the system's hardware. Networks, NC100s, RC2s, IOC16s, Access Points, Inputs, and Outputs can be added, deleted, or edited as required by the system's configuration. (For more information on *Hardware Setup* see page 204.)



Elevators

Click *Elevators* to create and/or assign floor outputs to an elevator reader for the purpose of controlling access to those floors. (For more information on *Elevators* see page 239.)

Floor Groups

Floor Groups will open the Elevator Floor Groups window so that combinations of elevator floor can be created for access control purposes. (For more information on *Floor Groups* see page 241.)

Device Groups

Device Groups allows the operator to create groups of like devices (access points, input and outputs). These groups can be used with operator commands or they can be used in links. Grouping like devices will make it easier to issue the same command to multiple devices. (For more information on creating, *Access Point Groups* see page 242, Input Groups see page 243, Output Groups see page 244, and Interlock Groups see page 245.)



Interlock Groups are groups of access points grouped for a different purpose. If any door contact of a member access point of an *Interlock Group* is in violation, then no other member of that group will grant access. I.e. **if any door of an** *Interlock Group* **is open then no other door, of that group, can be opened.**



<u>A</u>ccess Levels

Access Levels will open the Access Level window to create new access levels, edit existing access levels, or view the properties of existing access levels. (For more information on creating *Access Levels* see page 246.)

Companies

Companies will open a window to create Cardholder groups. Cardholder Groups (or *Companies*) are only used in *Operator Profiles*. They are used to segregate cardholder, and limit operators in their availability to cardholders. (For more information on creating *Companies* see page 252.)



Cardholders

Cardholders will open the Cardholder screen to add cardholders, edit existing cardholders, or view cardholder properties. (For more information on creating *Cardholders* see page 255.)

1	EE .
2	

Cardholder Types

Cardholder Types will open the Cardholder Type configuration screen to add, edit, or view Cardholder Types. (For more information on *Cardholder Types* see page 274.)



Assets

Assets will open the Asset configuration screen to add, edit, or view assets. (For more information on Assets see page 274.)



Cardholder Reader Access

Cardholder Reader Access will open the *Cardholder Reader Access Update* window to create special access for cardholders. (For more information on creating *Reader Access* see page 277.)

г	
Е	

Departments

Departments will open the Departments window. Departments are used to fill the Department 1 and Department 2 fields in the Cardholder screen. (For more information on creating Departments see page 251.)



Finger Print Readers

Finger Print Readers will open the *Finger Print Readers*. (For more information on creating *Finger Print Readers* see page 249)



Finger Print Reader Query

Finger Print Reader Query will open the *Finger Print Reader Query* window. (For more information on creating *Finger Print Reader Query* see page 250.)



Visitors

Visitors will open the Visitors window. (For more information on Visitors see page 280.)



AxiomLinks™

*AxiomLinks*TM will open the *AxiomLinks*TM window to create new links, edit the existing links, or view the properties of existing links. (For more information on creating *AxiomLinks*TM see page 290.)



Global Commands

Global Commands are the same as $AxiomLinks^{TM}$ except that the CommsServer executes them instead of the NC-100. Therefore (unlike $AxiomLinks^{TM}$) Global Commands can bridge networks. A command triggered on one network can be executed on another network. (For more information on creating Global Commands see page 295.)



Facility Codes

Facility Codes will open the *Facility Codes* window to enter new facility codes, edit the existing facility codes, or view existing facility codes. (For more information on creating *Facility Codes* see page 296.)



Message Ports

Message Ports will open the *Message Port* window to configure your ASCII message ports. You can setup new message ports, edit existing ports, or delete ports that are no longer required. (For more information on *Message Ports* see page 298.)



Guard Tour⁹



Tour Routes

Tour Route will open the configuration window for tour route as described on page 303.

Ø

Guard Groups

Guard Groups will open the configuration window for guard group as described on page 305.

Guard Tours

Guard Tours will open the configuration window for guard tours as described on page 306.

⁹ This selection is only available if the optional license for the Guard Tour Software has been purchased and installed.





Copy Wizard...

Copy Wizard will open the $AxiomV^{TM}$ Data Copy Wizard. Through the Copy Wizard the operator can copy selected data from one item to multiple like items.

Data Copy Wizard	
T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T	Axiom Data Copy Wizard This wizard will guide you through copying information from one record to other records
	Cancel < Back Next > Einish

 \triangleright

The *Copy Wizard* is a very versatile and quick way to program the AxiomVTM system. After programming one item, that item can be used as a template to program all of the other items of the same type. For example if one access point was programmed then all the other access points could be programmed from that one.

To copy data from one item to another start the *Copy Wizard* and click *Next*. Then follow the steps on the following pages.

1. First select a category from the pull down list.

Data Copy W	/izard					
			ecord. This info in the next step		ecord will be copied over	
	Access Points					•
Description RC2 1-1-1\R RC2 1-1-1\R	Areas	oint Grou oints	DS			
RC2 2-1-1\F RC2 2-1-1\F RC2 2-2-1\F	Caros Companie Celevators	es ;				•
RC2 2-2-1\R		Access	RC2 2-2-1 RC2 2-3-1	NC100 2-2 NC100 2-3	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	-
RC2 2-3-1\R RC2 2-3-1\R		Access Access	RC2 2-3-1 RC2 2-3-1	NC100 2-3 NC100 2-3	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152) Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	-
RC2 2-3-1(R RC2 2-4-1)R		Access	RC2 2-3-1 RC2 2-4-1	NC100 2-4	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	
RC2 2-4-1\R		Access	RC2 2-4-1	NC100 2-4	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	
RC2 2-5-1\R		Access	RC2 2-5-1	NC100 2-5	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	-
		Cano	el	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext > Eini:	sh

$\overline{\mathbb{V}}$		u select in the n	This information in this record will be copied over ext step.	
	Access Po	oints		-
Туре	Device Name	NC100 Name	Network Name	
Access	RC2 1-1-1	NC100 1-1	Network 1 (direct)	
Access	RC2 1-1-1	NC100 1-1	Network 1 (direct)	
Access	RC2 2-1-1	NC100 2-1	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	
Access	RC2 2-1-1	NC100 2-1	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	
Access	RC2 2-2-1	NC100 2-2	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	
Access	RC2 2-2-1	NC100 2-2	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	
Access	RC2 2-3-1	NC100 2-3	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	
Access	RC2 2-3-1	NC100 2-3	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	
Access	RC2 2-4-1	NC100 2-4	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	
Access	RC2 2-4-1	NC100 2-4	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	
Access	RC2 2-5-1	NC100 2-5	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	•
◀			▶	

2. Then choose the source record to be copied from.

3. Now select all of the destination records that are to be programmed.

		want to copy.		next step, you will
Description	Туре	Device Name	NC100 Name	Network Name 🔺
RC21-1-1\Reader1	Access	RC2 1-1-1	NC100 1-1	Network 1 (direct)
RC21-1-1\Reader2	Access	RC2 1-1-1	NC100 1-1	Network 1 (direct)
RC2 2-1-1\Reader 1	Access	RC2 2-1-1	NC100 2-1	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)
RC2 2-1-1\Reader 2	Access	RC2 2-1-1	NC100 2-1	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)
RC2 2-2-1\Reader 1	Access	RC2 2-2-1	NC100 2-2	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)
RC2 2-2-1\Reader 2	Access	RC2 2-2-1	NC100 2-2	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)
RC2 2-3-1\Reader 1	Access	RC2 2-3-1	NC100 2-3	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)
RC2 2-3-1\Reader 2	Access	RC2 2-3-1	NC100 2-3	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)
RC2 2-4-1\Reader 1	Access	RC2 2-4-1	NC100 2-4	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)
RC2 2-4-1\Reader 2	Access	RC2 2-4-1	NC100 2-4	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)
RC2 2-5-1\Reader 1	Access	RC2 2-5-1	NC100 2-5	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)
RC2 2-5-1\Reader 2	Access	RC2 2-5-1	NC100 2-5	Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)
•				•

4. At this point the fields to be copied are selected (choose from the list).

Da	ita C	opy Wizard					
	Ę	Select the fields you want to copy. Only these fields in the destination records will be replaced.					
		Field Name					
		Alarm Configuration					
		Alarm Lockout Time					
		Antipassback					
		Card Formats					
		CCTV Configuration					
		Configuration Mode					
	☑ DHO Alarm Time						
		DHO Warning Time					
		Entering Area					
		Exiting Area					
		Events Configuration					
		Extented Unlock Time					
		Icons —					
		NC100 Links					
		Beader Betries					
		Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>Finish</u>					



5. The final screen will allow you to review your selection before continuing. Click *Start* to execute the copy. As each item is updated it will be listed on the screen. You can go *Back* to do another copy or exit by clicking *Finish* or *Cancel*.

Data Copy Wizard	
	Completing Wizard
	You have provided the information required to start coping the records. Review the selections below and click on Start button RC2 1-1-1\Reader1 updated RC2 2-1-1\Reader2 updated RC2 2-1-1\Reader 1 updated RC2 2-2-1\Reader 2 updated RC2 2-2-1\Reader 2 updated
	Start
	Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>F</u> inish

	M
٩	

<u>M</u>ap Maker…

Map Maker is a module used to create maps (graphic displays) of a location. Devices and other items (like links to other maps) can be added to these maps. These maps can then be used to display the current status of the equipment in the chosen area. The *Status Bar* of this screen will display the number of maps already created.

🕒 AxiomV Map Maker	
<u>F</u> ile Draw Insert Display Settings	٦
Save ∰ Edit ♥ Cancel X Delete Ø Print ₩ Remove	1
ヽ□○ヽℤ≀७́А际∰	
A 🖓 📓 📓 🔇 🛁	
Name	
New Map	
Map Count:0	4



Save	
🇳 <u>P</u> rint 🐔 Printer Setup	
Import 🕨	New File
Exit	Background
	1

Import

Use *Import* to enter a pre-created graphic as a background for the map.

New File will import a graphics file as the background to a new map. *Background* will import a graphics file as the background to an existing map.

Draw

\mathbf{i}	Straight Line
	Rectangle
$^{\circ}$	Ellipse
\sim	Curved Line
Z	Poligon
2	Poliline
٢	Rotate
\mathbf{A}	Text
\square	Select

Use the *Draw* tools to enhance the map. Lines and shapes can be added to emphasize aspects of the map. Text can be added to label portions of the map for clarity.

Insert



Use the *Insert* tools to add device icons to the map. These icons (*Access Points, Inputs, Outputs* etc.) will show the status of the devices when the map is displayed. The *Map Link* icon can be used to call up another map to be displayed.

Display Settings



Commands Toolbar is a toolbar on the *Maps Display* that provides the commands for the last selected icon. If this feature is not selected, the operator needs to **right-click** on the icon to get a command list. This feature was developed to make it easier for operator using touch-screens to execute commands like 'Grant Access' from a map.

Custom Fields



This section allows additional user-defined cardholder\Visitor fields to be setup and given a field name. Additional fields might include, who to call in case of emergency, car license plate number, parking spot number, hiring date, tax codes, or any other information that is required for the cardholder.

🖼 Cardholders Design			<u> </u>
🔄 🔄 Save 🔊 Cancel 🛛 🛍 Tab 🦹 Text 123 Number	🔺 Label 🎆 Date 🛃 Time	Combo Imag	e
Card Number Last Name	First Name	Initials	
General Personal Options CodeLinks Groups Phot	o new		



1

Tab

Click on *Tab* to create a new tab. Just enter a new name for the tab and click *OK*.

Text

Click on *Text* to insert a text box on to the current tab. *Text* boxes can contain both alpha and numeric characters.

123

Number

Click on *Number* to insert a number box on to the current tab. *Number* boxes can only contain numeric characters.

A Label

Click on *Label* to create a label to describe a box or a group of boxes.

Date

Click on *Date* to insert a date box on to the current tab. *Date* boxes only contain valid calendars dates. You can pull down a calendar to scroll through and select a date or you can simply type over the day/month/year to change them.

Time

Ŧ

Click on *Time* to insert a time box on to the current tab. *Time* boxes only contain valid clock times. You can select hours, minutes, seconds, or AM/PM and use the up/down buttons to change the time or simply type over the current entry.

Combo

Click on *Combo* to insert a combo box on to the current tab. *Combo* boxes provide a pull down list of all the different entries already entered into the box. You can either select an entry from the list or type in a new one.

Image

Click on *Image* to insert a combo box on to the current tab. *Image* boxes are combo boxes that provide a pull down list of images. Image files are entered here or selected from the list if they were entered previously. These images are stored in the RBH Image folder along with cardholder pictures, and can be added to a Badging Template so that the picture appears on the cardholder's badge.

Field Properties

😭 Properties			×
Field Name			
Position Top 558	Left 4492	Height 315	Width 2025
Tool Tip Tex	t		Max Length 75
		<u>0</u> K	Cancel

Creating a new box will pop-up the properties window for that field. Enter the name of the field to be added to the database (it will be a searchable field). You may also enter your own 'Tool Tip' for this box; as well you may determine the maximum length of the field. The box can be repositioned on the tab by dragging it to the desired location. In the properties window its position can be set precisely (numerically).

Label properties have only *Caption* (instead of *Field* name) and *Position*, no *Tool Tip* or *Max Length*.

Right click on a box to delete the box or edit its properties.



Badge Templates¹⁰

Badging Template Designer

🜐 Badge Template	Designer							
🗅 🗣 🖬 🏝								
 Horizontal Card Vertical Card 3. Horizontal ID) 1.5	2.0	2.5	3.0	3.5	4.0	4.5	5.0
4. Vertical ID 5. Customized								
-1.0								
- -1.5								
- <u>-</u> 2.0								
-2.5 -								
-3.0								
Plese select New or Op	en a template to e	dit						///



New Template

Click on the down arrow to choose from the menu the size and orientation of the card template to be created.

- 1. Horizontal Card (Width 3.36", Height 2.18")
- 2. Vertical Card (Width 2.18", Height 3.36")
- 3. Horizontal ID (Width 3.50", Height 2.11")
- 4. Vertical ID (Width 2.11", Height 3.50")
- 5. Customized (Size set by user)

¹⁰ This selection is only available if the optional license for the Badging Software has been purchased and installed.



<u>Open</u>

To edit or view an existing template, click on Open.

d <u>Save</u>

To save the current template, click on Save.



Card Front

Clicking on Card Front will switch the card view to show the front of the card.



Card Back

Clicking on Card Back will switch the card view to show the back of the card.



<u>Copy</u>

Copy is used to create duplicate boxes on a card. If you need two *Text* boxes the same size, you can make a copy of the one you created to create the other. You can then edit box to have different data entered into each box.



Paste

Clicking Paste will actually create the copy.

Create a Badge



To create a badge template:

- Select the size and the orientation for the template.
- Right click on the card image to pop-up a menu where you can select *Properties* to choose a background picture or a background color for the card template.

Template Properties	×
Background Picture Background Color	
Picture Path:	
Appearence	
 Tile 	
C Center	
C Stretch	
C No Picture	
	Ok Cancel

The *Background Picture* tab allows you to add a background picture to the card template. Use the *Find* button []] to browse for a picture and set its appearance as *Tile*, *Center*, *Original Size*, or *Stretch*. *No Picture* is used to remove a previously chosen picture. This feature can be appropriately used to select the company logo, picture of the company building and such similar images as the background picture for the card template.

Template Properties	×
Background Picture Background Color	1
Picture Path: A:\newlogocolour.jpg Appearance © Tile	
C Center C Stretch C Orignal Size	
C No Picture	Region of Waterloc
	Ok Cancel

The *Background Color* tab will allow you to add a solid colour to the background of your card. Choose a colour by clicking on the *Change* button.

Template Properties	×
Background Picture Background Color	
Color-	
Background Change	
	Dk Cancel

• After setting up the card's background, right click on the card template again to insert one of the fields available.

🔅 Badge T		8	è 🔒					
0.0	0.5	1.0	1.5	2.5	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	4.0	4.5	5.0
-0.0		1				1		
- -0.5	e Lre	ate Win	dow		X			
					Paste			
- 					Insert Te Insert Ph			
:					Insert Sig	gnature Fie	eld	
-1.5						ngerprint F Ircode Fiel		
-					Insert Sh	аре		
-2.0 :					Save Ten	nplate		
- -2.5					Save Ten	nplate As		
					Propertie	s		
-3.0								
Creating a ne	ew templa	ate						11.

• Select *Insert Photo Field* to insert a picture field in the card template.

Create Window	×
Picture	

• Right click on the *Picture* box and select *Properties*.

Сору
Delete
Bring Field To Front Send Field To Back
Properties

You can arrange overlapping boxes on your card template with Bring Field to Front and Send Field to Back.

Image Field Properties	×
General Details	
Field Name Static Picture Picture Field 1 Picture Field 2 Appearance Stretch Photo Size	
	Ok Cancel

A *Static Picture* is usually something like a company logo, (use the *Find* button [**] to browse for the required picture) while *Picture Field* will insert the cardholder's picture. *Best Fit* will display the picture in its actual size and *Stretch* will fill the available space completely with the picture. The default picture box size is 1440 by 1800 (that's a standard portrait ratio of 1:1¹/₄). The *Photo Size* button changes the box size to 1600 by 2000.

Image Field Properties		×
General Details		
BorderStyle		
C None	Fixed Single	
Position	Size	
Top 520	Width 1600	
Left	Height	
75	2000	
	Ok	Cancel

Under the Details tab you can choose to have a border around the picture box. You can adjust the size and position of the box as well.

Next add a *Signature/fingerprint* box the same way you added the picture box.

📑 Create Window		×
	Signature	

Right click on the *Signature* box and set the properties for signature box as you did for the picture box. *Signature* and *Fingerprint* boxes only have one tab in their properties. You can set the size & position of signature/fingerprint box either by stretching and moving the box in the card template itself or by setting its position in the properties window.
Singature and Fing	jerprint Field Properties	×
General		
BorderStyle C None	 Fixed Single 	
Position Top 2025 Left 1935	Width FieldName 2160 FieldName Height Signature Field 450 Signature Field	
	Signature Field 1	el

Add *Text* boxes the same way that you've added the *Picture* and *Signature* boxes.



A *Text* box like *Picture* boxes can have fields inserted from the Cardholders Database, or it can have static (or fixed) text.

Text Field Properties			×
General Details			
Field Name Static Text	Static Data		-
Position Top 1185 Left 1770	Size Width 1695 Height 375	Alignment C Left C Right C Center	
		Ok	Cancel

Size and Position can be set exactly and Alignment can be configured.

Text Field Properties		×
General Details		
Field Name		☐ Inverted
Position Top 90 Left 1620	Size Width 2000 Height 400	Alignment C Left C Right Center
		Ok Cancel

Text Details tab is where the font for the text can be changed. *Foreground* colour will change the colour of the text itself, while *Background* colour will change the background in the text box only. A pure white background will not be printed; therefore the card background will show around the text. To print a white background change the colour to something that is close but not pure white.

If you have selected a background colour for the card template, you would probably like to have the same colour selected as the background for the text box.

Text Field Properties	×
General Details	
Font MS Sans Serif 8.25 Colors Foreground Change BackStyle O Transparent Opaque	Background Change BorderStyle None Fixed Single
	Ok Cancel

RBH Badging Module also supports what is called Vertical Text.

In *Text* boxes that are taller than they are wide (and have a TrueType font selected) the text will be rotated 90° (or 270° if the *Inverted* box is checked).

🐮 🖪 Demo Templa	te - Front Side	×
<signature></signature>	<lastname></lastname>	RBH Access Tech Inc.



Text Field Properties		×
General Details		
Field Name Static Text	Static Data RBH Access Tech Inc	lnverted
Position Top 15 Left 4305	Size Width 420 Height 2805	Alignment C Left C Right C Center
		Ok Cancel

The same text can be rotated 270° if the *Inverted* Box is checked in the *Text Field Properties* Window.

👷 Demo Templa	ite - Front Side	×
<signature></signature>	<lastname></lastname>	RBH Access Tech Inc.

The inverted Box is visible only if the text selected is vertical.



When you are finished with the front of your card flip it over by clicking on the backside button in *Badge Template Designer* window and do the backside.



You will have to save your template before flipping to the backside of the template.

The same procedures apply to the back that applied to the front.

Add Bar Code field the same way that you've added the Text, Picture and Signature boxes



To add a barcode you will need to install the required barcode font. Select from the list under *Barcode Type* and choose a *Barcode Size*. Select under *Field Name* the source of the data for the barcode. You have the option to select *Static Text* or one of the Cardholder's fields, as the field for *Barcode*, same as in case of *Text Field*. *Preview* will show you how the barcode will appear.

Barcode Field Properties	×
General Details	
Field Name Card Number Preview Barcode Type: Barcode Size: CODE 39 48 Preview	
Ok Cancel	

The *Details* tab allows you set the *Size*, *Position*, and *Alignment* for the Barcode box. Border or no border is also selected here.

Barcode Field Properties		×
General Details		
Position Top 1800 Left 90	Size Width 4650 Height 900	Alignment C Left C Right C Center
	BorderSt © Non	· / /
		Ok Cancel

You can add extra text in a *Text* box one line at a time, or you could create a bitmap with multiple lines and add it as a picture.

Demo Template - Back Side	×
If this card is found text	-

When you have completed your design; save it. It can then be used with RBH database to display cardholders and print cards.

Template Name Input Window	×
Select a template name here:	OK
	Cancel
Demo Template	

Saved templates can be viewed with the cardholder data under the *Photo* tab in the cardholder/visitor screen.



Backup will open the AxiomVTM System Backup Wizard. Through the Backup Wizard the operator can either run a backup immediately or configure the backup to run automatically.

Run Now



> To run the backup immediately, click '*Run Now*' or the radio button beside it.

Axiom¥ Ba	ckup Wizard	
Backup I Sele	Files ect files you want to backup	-
	 AxiomV Databases AxiomLog Database AxiomLanguage Database AxiomV Graphics Folder AxiomV Images Folder AxiomV Maps Folder AxiomV Reports Folder AxiomV Audio Folder 	
	Cancel Cancel Next >>	Finish

1. Select the items to be backed up by clicking in the box to check or uncheck the selection.

Backup Destination	
Select the destination backup device	
Destination Device Folder Image: C:\Program Files\RBH\AxiomV\Data\Backup\	
Cancel << Back Next >> Finis	

2. Enter or select the folder the backup files will be sent to.

Axiom¥ Backup Wizard	
1 Mars	Completing Wizard
1 7	You have successfully specified the information required. Review the selections below and click on Start to execute
	Summary Action: You have Selected: AxiomData Database AxiomLog Database AxiomLog Database AxiomV Graphics Folder AxiomV Images Folder AxiomV Maps Folder AxiomV Reports Folder AxiomV Audio Folder
	Backup folder:
	Cancel << Back Next >> Finish

3. Verify your backup parameters by reviewing the summary, then click *Start* to execute the backup. A progress bar will appear and each file will be listed as it is backed up. You can click *Stop* during the procedure to cancel the backup. Click *Finish* to exit.

Axiom¥ Backup Wizard		
Mars	Completing Wizard	
	Starting Backup Backing up AxiomData Succeeded Backing up AxiomLog Succeeded Backing up Graphics Folder Succeeded Backing up Images Folder Succeeded Backing up Maps Folder Succeeded Succeeded Start	
	Cancel << Back Next >> Finish	

Auto Backup

Axiom¥ Backup Wizard		
	AxiomV System Backup Wizard	
	The wizard will guide you through configuring system backup.	
	C Run Now Configure Auto-Backup	
	Cancel << Back Next >> Finish	

Click on *Configure Auto-Backup* to set the parameters for a scheduled backup.

Axiom¥ Ba	:kup Wizard
Backup Sel	Files ect files you want to backup
	 AxiomV Databases AxiomLog Database AxiomLog Database AxiomLanguage Database AxiomV Graphics Folder AxiomV Images Folder AxiomV Maps Folder AxiomV Reports Folder AxiomV Reports Folder AxiomV Audio Folder
	Cancel Cancel Finish

AxiomVTM User's Guide

1. Select the items to be backed up by clicking in the box to check or uncheck the selection.

Axiom¥ Back	up Wizard	
Backup De Select	estination t the destination backup device	
	Pestination Device	
	Enter or select the folder name C:\Program Files\RBH\AxiomV\Data\Backup\	
	Cancel << Back Next >>	Finish

2. Enter or select the folder the backup files will be sent to.

Axiom¥ Backup Wizard	
Backup Schedule Select the time and day(s) to run backup	478
Control Contro	
Overwrite backed-up files after following number of day(s)	
Cancel << Back Next >>	Finish

RBH Access Technologies Inc.

3. Choose the time of day and the days of the week the backup is to be executed. Also select how old backup files are to be before overwriting them.



4. Verify your parameter choices and select *Finish* to complete the setup.

Restore

Restore will open the $AxiomV^{TM}$ System Restore Wizard. Through the Restore Wizard the operator can run a restore to replace existing data with previously backed up data.

Axiom¥ Restore Wizard		
	AxiomV System Restore Wizard	
	The wizard will guide you through configuring system restore.	
	Warning:	
	Warning: Restore will copy all selected files from the source folder to the current system. Before running Restore Wizard ensure that all other clients and programs are closed. Failure to do so may result in a corrupted system and data loss.	
	Cancel << Back Next >> Finish	

> Click on *Next* to set the parameters and continue with the *Restore*.

Axiom¥ Rest	tore Wizard	
Source Fil Selec	es at the source device	
	Enter or select the folder name C:\Program Files\RBH\AxiomV\Data\Backup\20040302\09	
	Cancel << Back Next >>	Finish

1. Enter or select the folder from which the backup is to retrieve the files from.

Axiom¥ Res	tore Wizard
Restore F Sele	iles ct files you want to restore
	 AxiomV Databases AxiomV Databases AxiomLanguage Database AxiomV Graphics Folder AxiomV Images Folder AxiomV Maps Folder AxiomV Reports Folder AxiomV Audio Folder AxiomV Audio Folder
	Cancel << Back Next >> Finish

2. Select the items to be restored up by clicking in the box to check or uncheck the selection.



3. Click *Start* to execute the restore. Restored files will be listed as they are restored. Clicking *Finish* will exit the *Restore Wizard*.

Axiom¥ Restore Wizard	
	Starting Restore Restoring AxiomData
	Cancel << Back Next >> Finish



History Settings

History Settings	×
History Duration (days)	Ok
	Execute
	Cancel

History Duration (days) is used to set the number of days of history that are to be kept. Any records beyond this duration are deleted. Clicking *OK* will accept any changes made and exit the window. The change will take effect during the next *History Purge*. If *Execute* is clicked then the change is applied immediately. Reducing the number could mean the deletion of some files. *Cancel* will exit the window without saving any changes that were made.

Reset Toolbar

Reset Toolbar will return the Toolbar to its default settings. These settings though will be subject to the current user's *Operator Profile*. Selections that part of the Toolbar's default setting will not be shown if the current user does not have access to these items.

Void Cards

From *Void Cards* the operator can manually void (deactivate) cards that have not been used for a preset number of days. The number of days is set under the tab System in *File* - *System Settings*.

🕀 Void C	ards Utility				- D ×
🚑 Print	🔞 Void 🗸 Selec	t All			
Select	Cardnumber	Last Name	First Name	Department	
	336 1 2361	Gyorkos	Mark		

3 83

Print will produce a hard copy of the cardholders listed at the time Print is selected.

Void will immediately deactivate all selected cards.

Select All will put a check mark in the select field for all of the listed cards.

Import¹¹

Selecting Import will start the Card Import utility.

AxiomVTM Card Import Wizard is used to import cardholder information from other sources into AxiomVTM.

븆 Axiom¥ Card Import Wizard		
The wizard will guide you through c	onfiguring AxiomV Import utility	
	Select the Source Format Text file SQL Database MS Access Database	
Cancel	< Back <u>N</u> ext >	Einish

• Select one of the three available *Source Formats* of the file to be imported (the file with the cardholder data) and then click the *Next* button.

¹¹ This selection is only available if the optional license for the Import & Export Utilities has been purchased and installed.

Text Format

🗧 Axiom¥ Card Import Wizard	
Select File Name	
C:\cardholders.txt]
	<u></u>
Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Einish
	0.001

• If you selected *Text File* as the *Source Format*, select the file to be imported from and click the *Next* button. You can use the browse button (...) to search for the path to the required file.

🗧 Axiom¥ Card Import Wizard	
First row in text file has column headers	
Field Separator	
Tab	
, ↓ Upon successfull Import delete the file.	
pon saccess an inport delete the net.	
Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Einish

- Select the type of *Field Separator* used in the source file and click the *Next* button.
 Separators can be:
 - Tab Comma (,) Semicolon (;) Pipeline (|) Colon (:)
- Check 'First row in text file has column headers' if it is applicable.
- Check 'Upon successful Import delete the file' you want the text file deleted after the data has been imported.

Axiom Fields		Unique Field
Action		
Lastname		
Firstname	None	
Initials	CardholderID	
Street	Lastname	
City	Firstname Initials	
Postal	Street	
State	City	
Country	Postal	
Phone		
Email		
Ext		
Warning! Mapping wrong	fields will result in invalid c	ardholder data
Enter Date Format in Sourc	e File	
	Ye File I	

■ Map the source fields to AxiomVTM cardholder fields. Mapping the wrong fields may result in invalid cardholder data. Enter the Date Format of the source file if you are importing date fields as well. Card usage count can be increased by the inputted number instead of being set to that number by checking the box. Check the appropriate box for any Unique Fields. If nothing is checked, then Card Number is taken to be the unique field by default. Click *Next* to launch the window to schedule the import.

🗧 Axiom¥ Card	Import Wizard	- 🗆 🗙
	dule for auto run or click next to run the import now.	
	Scheduled Import	
	C Every Hours	
	Daily 12:30:00 PM	
	I Mon I Tue I Wed I Thu I Fri I Sat I Sun	
	Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Einish

- Configure the *Schedule* for importing cardholders' information. Click the *Next* button to have the option of selecting *Run* (to import the selected information right away) or minimize the Wizard to auto run the import at the scheduled time. The utility can also be set to start up when the Operating System starts.
- The import utility can be set to run at an interval set in hours (e.g. every two hours or every five), or it can be set to run on specific days at a specific time (e.g. 12:30pm).

🛱 Axiom¥ Card Import Wizard	
You have successfully provided the information required for import. To a the import now click on Run button or minimize the window to run at a scheduled time.	execute
View Report	in 1
Cancel Seck Mext >	Einish

• Click on *Run* button to start importing the selected fields from the source file to AxiomVTM cardholder.

🗧 Axiom¥ Card Import Wizard
You have successfully provided the information required for import. To execute the import now click on Run button or minimize the window to run at a scheduled time.
Processing record 41 of 55 Processing record 42 of 55 Processing record 43 of 55 Processing record 44 of 55 Processing record 45 of 55 Processing record 46 of 55 Processing record 47 of 55 Processing record 48 of 55
Processing record 49 of 55 Processing record 50 of 55 Processing record 51 of 55 Processing record 52 of 55 Processing record 53 of 55 Processing record 54 of 55 Processing record 55 of 55
View Report Run
Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>Einish</u>

- Minimize the Import Wizard to have in auto run mode. Clicking on the *Finish* button will shut down the AxiomVTM Card Import Utility.
- Click on *View Report* button to view Axiom Import Log information once the cardholder information is imported to AxiomVTM cardholder.



MS Access Database Format



• Select the *Source format* as *MS Access Database* and click on *Next* button.

ŧ	Axiom¥ Card Import Wizard	
	Select File Name	
	\\Emailserver\SharedDocs\Databases\Temp\Cardholders.mdb	
	OR	
	Connection String	
	New	
	Test Connection	
_		
	Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>Finish</u>	

• Select the *File Name* or write in the *Connection String*, whichever way the source file from where the cardholder information to be imported, is available.

‡) Axiom¥	Card Import Wiza	rd		_ 🗆 ×
Sele	t File Name			
		OR		_
Con	nection String			
Pro	vider=Microsoft.Jet.@	DLEDB.4.0;Data So	ource=databaseNa	ame
				New
	Ŀ	est Connection		
	Cancel	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Einish

• Select *Table* or *Query* for importing Cardholder information.

	d Import Wizard	
⊙ Table C Query	Select a Table : Cards	
	Cancel < Back Next >	Einish
€ Axiom¥ Car	d Import Wizard	
⊂ Table € Query		
Query	Select cardnumber,Last name,First name,City from (

-	Click on Next	button to	Map the	fields to	be imported.
	CHER ON WEAR	button to	map the	neius to	be imported.

Map the fields to be importe Axiom Fields	ed	Unique Field		
Action			-	
Lastname	_			
Firstname Initials	None		_	
Street	Lastname			
City	Firstname			
Postal	Initials Street			
State	City			
Country	Postal			
Phone				
Email				
Ext			_ _	
Warning! Mapping wrong fields will result in invalid cardholder data Enter Date Format in Source File				

■ Map the source fields to AxiomVTM cardholder fields. Mapping the wrong fields may result in invalid cardholder data. Enter Date Format of the source file if you are importing date fields as well. Card usage count can be increased by the inputted number instead of being set to that number by checking the box. Check in the Unique Field. If nothing is checked, then Card number is taken to be the unique field by default. Click *Next* to launch the window to schedule the import.

🗧 Axiom¥ Card Import Wizard			
Set up the schedule for auto run or click next to run the import now.			
Scheduled Import			
Ŀ	© Every Hours		
	I Mon I Tue I Wed I Thu I Fri I Sat I Sun		
l			
	Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Einish	

- Configure the *Schedule* for importing cardholders' information. Click the *Next* button to have the option of selecting *Run* (to import the selected information right away) or minimize the Wizard to auto run the import at the scheduled time. The utility can also be set to start up when the Operating System starts.
- The import utility can be set to run at an interval set in hours (e.g. every two hours or every five), or it can be set to run every day at a specific time (e.g. 12:55 p.m.).

🗧 Axiom¥ Card Import Wizard	
You have successfully provided the information required for import. To a the import now click on Run button or minimize the window to run at a scheduled time.	execute
View Report Ru	
Cancel Seach Mext >	Einish

• Click on *Run* button to start importing the selected fields from the source file to AxiomVTM cardholder.

🛱 Axiom¥ Card Import Wizard				
You have successfully provided the information required for import. To execute the import now click on Run button or minimize the window to run at a scheduled time.				
Processing record 41 of 55 Processing record 42 of 55 Processing record 43 of 55 Processing record 44 of 55 Processing record 45 of 55 Processing record 46 of 55 Processing record 47 of 55 Processing record 48 of 55 Processing record 49 of 55 Processing record 50 of 55 Processing record 51 of 55 Processing record 52 of 55 Processing record 53 of 55 Processing record 53 of 55				
Processing record 54 of 55 Processing record 55 of 55	•			
View Report Ru	n			
Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Einish			

- Minimize the Import Wizard to have in auto run mode. Clicking on the *Finish* button will shut down the AxiomVTM Card Import Utility.
- Click on *View Report* button to view Axiom Import Log information once the cardholder information is imported to AxiomVTM cardholder.



SQL Database Format



• Select the *Source format* as *SQL Database* and click on *Next* button.

ŧ	Axiom¥ Card Import Wizard	
	Ne	w
		<u> </u>
	Test Connection	
_		
	Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> >	Einish

• Click on *New* Button to provide the information about the connection string for the SQL database from where the cardholders' information is to be imported.

💐 Build Connection String	x X
Provider	ja polorede
Server	
Trusted Connection	
User Id	
Password	
DataBase	
	OK Cancel

• Provide the above information to build a valid connection string. Use 'sa' as the 'User Id' and 'password' for the 'password' if you haven't changed them.
💐 Build Connection String	×
Provider	SQLOLEDB
Server	TESTINGSERVER
Trusted Connection	
User Id	sa
Password	password
DataBase	Test
	OK Cancel

• Click *OK* to get back to connection string window.

ŧ	Axiom 5.0 Card Import Wizard	×
	Connection String	
	provider=SQLOLEDB;server=PROGRAMMING_4;database=Test;truste	
	New	
	Tesh Connection	
	Test Connection	
	Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>Finish</u>	

• Click on *Test Connection* button to verify a valid connection string.

Axiom¥ Data Import	×
Connection Successful.	
OK	

• If the information provided is correct, you will get the message 'Connection Successful', otherwise

Axiom¥ Data Import	×
Connection failed	
ОК	

• Click on *Next* button after providing a successful connection for importing cardholder SQL database.

€) Axiom¥	Card Import Wizard	
💿 Tab		
O Que		
	Select a Table :	
	vwCardholders	
	Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Einish
		CHINE I

• Select *Table* or *Query* for importing Cardholder information. Select the name of the table if 'Table' option is selected or write the query if 'Query' option is selected.

🕂 Axiom¥ Car	rd Import Wizard	_ 🗆 🗙
C Table		
Query		
Query		
	select * from data where idsort = 'valid'	
		1
	Cancel < Back Next >	Einish

• Click on *Next* button to Map the fields to be imported.

Axiom Fields		Unique Field	_	
Action				
Lastname		▁────	_	
Firstname	None		_	
Initials	CardholderID			
Street	Lastname Firstname			
City	Initials			
Postal	Street			
State	City			
Country	Postal			
Phone				
Email				
Ext			-	
Warning! Mapping wrong fields will result in invalid cardholder data Enter Date Format in Source File				

■ Map the source fields to AxiomVTM cardholder fields. Mapping the wrong fields may result in invalid cardholder data. Enter Date Format of the source file if you are importing date fields as well. Card usage count can be increased by the inputted number instead of being set to that number by checking the box. Check in the Unique Field. If nothing is checked, then Card number is taken to be the unique field by default. Click *Next* to launch the window to schedule the import.

🗧 Axiom¥ Card	Import Wizard	
Set up the schedule for auto run or click next to run the import now. Start import program with the OS. Scheduled Import		
Ŀ	© Every Hours © Daily 12:30:00 PM	
	I Mon I Tue I Wed I Thu I Fri I Sat I Sun	
	Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Einish	

- Configure the *Schedule* for importing cardholders' information. Click the *Next* button to have the option of selecting *Run* (to import the selected information right away) or minimize the Wizard to auto run the import at the scheduled time. The utility can also be set to start up when the Operating System starts.
- The import utility can be set to run at an interval set in hours (e.g. every two hours or every five), or it can be set to run every day at a specific time (e.g. 12:55 p.m.).

🗧 Axiom¥-Card Import Wizard	- 🗆 🗵
You have successfully provided the information required for import. To ex the import now click on Run button or minimize the window to run at a scheduled time.	xecute
View Report Rur	۰
Cancel Cancel Next >	Einish

• Click on *Run* button to start the import.

You have successfully provided the information required for import. To execute the import now click on Run button or minimize the window to run at a scheduled time.
Processing record 41 of 55 Processing record 42 of 55 Processing record 43 of 55 Processing record 43 of 55 Processing record 45 of 55 Processing record 46 of 55 Processing record 47 of 55 Processing record 48 of 55 Processing record 49 of 55 Processing record 50 of 55 Processing record 51 of 55 Processing record 52 of 55 Processing record 54 of 55 Processing record 55 of 55
View Report Run
Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>M</u> ext > <u>Finish</u>

- Minimize the Import Wizard to have in auto run mode. Clicking on the *Finish* button will shut down the AxiomVTM Card Import Utility.
- Click on *View Report* button to view *Axiomimp_info.log* file to check the error messages for import, if any.



Export

Selecting *Export* will start the Card Export utility.



Browse or type the name of the file to be saved. Check the box if you wish to overwrite an existing file of that name.

Check the second box if you wish to include column headers in the text file.

Select the Field Separator to be used and then click Next.

ŧ	Axiom Card Export		
	Map the fields to be importe	d	
	Axiom Fields	Dest Fields	
	Notes	Descricios	
	Department		
	PictureData		
	SignatureData		
	FingerPrintData		
	CardNumber	Field 3	
	Issue Level		
	Access Level		
	Activation Date	Field 4	
	Expiry Date	Field 5	
	Pin		
	Usage Count		
	Card Status	Field 6	-
	Enter Date Formatfor expo	ort file yyyyy mmm dd	
	Const		
	Cancel	< Back Next > Fi	nish

Select which $AxiomV^{TM}$ fields are to be saved and to which destination fields.

If a date field is being saved enter the desired date format to be used.

🗧 Axiom Care	d Export	<u> </u>
Set up the sch	hedule for auto run or click next to run the export now.	
	Start program with the OS.	
	Scheduled Export	
	C Every Hrs	
	_	
لنا	Daily 4:15:00 PM	
		_
	Mon Tue Wed Thu	
	🔽 Fri 🔲 Sat 🕅 Sun	
	Cancel < Back Next > Ein	rish

If you want the *Export* utility to start very time the computer starts then check the top box.

Check the second box to configure a schedule for periodic exports, every x number of hours (up to twenty-four), or on specified days at a specified time.

Click *Next* to go on to the next screen.

ŧ	Axiom Card Export	_ 🗆 🗙
	You have successfully provided the information required for export, the export now click on Run button or minimize the window to run at scheduled time.	To execute a
	View Report	Run
	Cancel Sack Next > Fit	nish

After setting up the export you can either *Run* it now, minimize the screen to run in the background, or shut it down by clicking on *Finish*.

🗧 Axiom Card Export	- 🗆 🗵
You have successfully provided the information required for expor the export now click on Run button or minimize the window to run scheduled time.	
Please Wait writng source file Starting export Export Completed	
View Report	Run
Cancel < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Einish

The green RBH globe icon can be found in the bottom right corner of your computer screen when the Export utility is running in the background.



External Tools

External Tools allows the user to access programs, utilities, and tools that are not part of the AxiomVTM system.

ŧ	External Tools			×
1	New 🗠 Cancel	🗙 Delete		
	Name			
	lcon			
	Application Path			
r		·		-
	Name	Icon Path	Application Path	

Name

Enter the name (description) of the desired program (utility or tool) is you would like it displayed in the menu.

Icon

Browse and enter the path to the icon that is to be displayed in the menu (optional).

Application Path

Browse and enter the path to the desired program (utility or tool).

External Tools			2	<
🔚 Save 🔊 Cancel 🗙	Delete			
Name				
MImport	_			
lcon				
\\Testing_4\C\Program	Files\RBH\AxiomV\bin\AxiomLogo.ic	0		
Application Path				
\\Testing_4\C\Program	Files\RBH\AxiomV\bin\MImport.exe		()	
Name	Icon Path	Application Path		
,				

Save the entry and it will be added to the External Tools menu.

External Tools	💽 🛠 Add Tool	
	🌐 MImport	

Reports

🜐 Axiom¥ Secu	rity System			
Eile <u>V</u> iew Syst	em <u>S</u> tatus <u>D</u> atal	base <u>T</u> ools	<u>R</u> eports	<u>H</u> elp
\$\$	S	7	🔋 <u>H</u> isto	ry
Log Off	Events Viewer	System S <u>t</u> at	Data	base
🛛 🎕 🤽 😹 🔇) 🖪 鬥 🌇	🚇 🎹 🛛	l 🏄 🗭) 🚺 🐴

<u>H</u>istory Reports

History Report will open the *AxiomV*TM *History Report* window. The operator can generate reports from the history files, filtered and sorted as needed.

🖶 Axiom¥ History Reports		
Preview Print DVR	A MA Font Find	
Main Report NC100 Report Device Controller Report Access Point Report Input Report Output Report CardHolders Report Operator Report Time & Attendance Report Alarms Report KeyPad / Apartment Report Network Report Access Granted Hourly Count Assets Report Visitors Details Visitors Currently Checked In	General Messages Sgrting Save Date Time Start 1 /14/2008 12:00:00 AM Daily Report End 1 /14/2008 11:59:59 PM	

Information on how to create Event History Reports is given on page 307 of Chapter 8.



SQL Server Agent

To maintain your *Event History*, SQL Server Agent <u>must</u> be running. To confirm that SQL Server Agent is running double click the SQL Server Service Manager icon (found on the right-side of the Task Manager, near the clock display).

🚡 SQL Server S	iervice Manager	
Ser <u>v</u> er:	TESTING_2	•
Se <u>r</u> vices:	SQL Server Agent	•
	Refres <u>h</u> services	
	<u>S</u> tart/Continue <u>P</u> ause Stop	
☑ Auto-start ser	vice when OS starts	
Running - \\TEST	ING_2 - SQLServerAgent	

SQL Server Agent maintains the AxiomLog files. Additional history files will be created (e.g. AxiomLog1, AxiomLog2) as the amount of history data increases. After a history data file surpasses 1.5 GB a new file is created.



If your history data file (AxiomLog.mdf) grows beyond 1.6 GB contact RBH Support for assistance. You will likely lose history if your history data file reaches 2048Mb.

Database Reports

Database Report will open the $AxiomV^{TM}$ Database Report Designer window. This window will allow the operator to generate reports from the database files, designed as needed by the operator.

🛱 Axiom¥ Database Reports	
Preview Designer Print Font Refresh Delete Find	
Access Level Report	
Access Point Group Report Access Point Report Access Point Report	
Apartments Report Area Report	
CardHolder High Security Read	
CardHolder Link Report CardHolder Lock Unlock Read	
CardHolder Readers Report	
CardHolder Report CardHolder Simple Report	
Company Report	
Device Controller Report Elevators Groups Report	
Elevators Report	
Facility Codes Report Global Commands Report	
Holiday Report	
Input Group Report	
Input Report Select All	
	11.

Information on how to create Database Reports is given on page 318 of Chapter 8.

Help



Typing F1 while in the program will bring up a portion of the Help Utility relating to the current screen.



🔮 Axiom¥ - 🗆 🗵 (Print ł **Ø**- \Leftrightarrow 씁 Hide Home Back Options . Contents Index Search Conventions in this guide 🖃 🔟 Welcome to AxiomV Copy Right and Trademarks
 About This Code Menu options, window titles, fields, and buttons are indicated by italic typeface. For example, "choose Computer Conventions used in this
 Before Installing AxiomV Conventions used in this guide Config from the System menu" or "click Cancel to cancel your changes". Keyboard actions and function keys are denoted by **bold typeface**. For example, "press F1 to display online help". 🌭 3. View + 🍫 4. System Status + Keyboard control sequences (i.e., using two or more keyboard keys in combination), are denoted by keys in **bold** 🔈 5. Database + typeface separated by a plus sign (+). For example, "press Ctrl + Alt + Delete to reboot the system". 戾 6. Reports 🔈 7. Tools શ 8. Customize Tool Bars ? 9. Glossary 😨 10. License and Warranty A section beginning with an arrow symbol indicates the start of a task or procedure. Following the <table-cell> Support introductory statement are step-by-step instructions necessary to complete the procedure. A section that begins with a pencil symbol indicates special information of which you may want to take additional notice. Ŧ A section that begins with a hand symbol indicates cautionary information. A section that begins with a bomb symbol indicates warning information. <u>Copyright[©] 1995-2004 RBH Access Technologies Inc. - License & Warranty</u>

Contents will take you into the online help.

Index...

🛃 Axiom¥		
Hide Back Forward Home Print		
Hide Back Forward Home Print Contents Index Search Type in the keyword to find: custom fields Custom Reports Data Time Department Device Access Device Controller Status DHO Warning Disam Input D-Net Errors Download Duplex Printer DVR Events Blocking Events (Maximum) Events Viewer Execute on holidays Expiry Date Extended High Security Facility Code Fingerprint Fireware Upgrade Fireware Setup High Security History Settings Horizontal ID Ignore High Security Instruction Messages Inputs Groups Status Inputs Groups Inputs Groups Inputs Groups Inputs Status Inputs Groups Inputs Corups Inputs Corups	Cyclose Custom Fields This section allows additional user-defined cardholder fields to be setup and given a field name. Additional fields m include, who to call in case of emergency, car license plate number, parking spot number, hiring date, tax codes or a other information that is required for the cardholder: Cardholders Design Cardholders Design Cardholders Design Card Number Last Name First Name Initials General Personal Options CodeLinks Groups Photo Status Card Type Issue Level PIN Code Usage Count Card Type Issue Level PIN Code Usage Count Card Type Issue Level Special Access Levels Notes Cardholders Last Name Initials Cardholders Level Notes Cardination Date Cardholders Level Notes Cardination Date Cardholders Level Notes Cardholders Cardholders Cardholders Cardholders Cardholders Cardholder Cardholders Cardholder Cardholders Cardholder Cardholders Cardholder Cardholders Cardholde Cardholder Cardholder Cardholder Cardholder Cardholder Cardholder Cardholders Cardholder Ca	
		•

Index will take you into the online help.

Technical Support

💕 Axiom¥					
Hide Back Forward	Home Print	 Options			
<u>Contents</u> Index <u>S</u> earch Type in the keyword to find:	Support :				
List Topics Select Topic to display:	ACCE	BH ss NOLOGIES	Addres Email Web	s RBH Access Technologies Inc 2 , Automatic Road , Suite 108 Brampton , ON - L6S 6K8 Canada <u>Support@rbh-access.com</u> <u>www.Rbh-Access.com</u>	
<u>D</u> isplay					_

Clicking support brings up a window that has information on how to contact RBH for technical support.



AxiomV™ on the Web

Clicking here will launch the Internet Explorer and take you to the RBH web site.

AxiomV Version 5.2.13 Release 3 Copyright © 1995-2006 RBH Access Technologies Inc.(Canada) RBH Access Technologies Inc. Email: info@rbh-access.com www.rbh-access.com This Product is licensed to: Options selected Guard Tour System Card Import Asset Tracking System History Report Scheduler Dealer Information ABC Security Company 123 Some Street Anytown, NF	About Axiom¥	- Professional Edition
Email: info@rbh-access.com www.rbh-access.com This Product is licensed to: Options selected Guard Tour System Card Import Asset Tracking System History Report Scheduler Dealer Information ABC Security Company 123 Some Street		AxiomV Version 5.2.13 Release 3
Email: info@rbh-access.com www.rbh-access.com This Product is licensed to: Options selected Guard Tour System Card Import Asset Tracking System History Report Scheduler Dealer Information		Copyright © 1995-2006 RBH Access Technologies Inc.(Canada)
Options selected Guard Tour System Card Import Asset Tracking System History Report Scheduler Dealer Information ABC Security Company 123 Some Street		Email: info@rbh-access.com
Guard Tour System Card Import Asset Tracking System History Report Scheduler Dealer Information ABC Security Company 123 Some Street		This Product is licensed to:
ABC Security Company 123 Some Street	RBH	Guard Tour System Card Import Asset Tracking System
123 Some Street	Dealer Information	
	123 Some Street	pany

This window will display the current version of the software.

To input information into the 'Dealer Information' box create a notepad file called "rbh.ini" <u>as shown below</u> and save it in the 'bin' folder under AxiomVTM. (*Enter your company's name in place of ''RBH Access Technologies Inc.''*). You can also add an additional ten lines to your dealer information.

🜌 rbh.ini - Notepad	- D ×
<u>Eile Edit Format H</u> elp	
[Dealer]	*
DealerName=RBH Access Technologies Inc. DealerInfo1= DealerInfo2= DealerInfo3= DealerInfo4= DealerInfo5= DealerInfo6= DealerInfo7= DealerInfo8= DealerInfo8=	•

Toolbars

Axiom V^{TM} has customizable toolbars. Items can be added to or removed from the standard toolbar. As well additional toolbars can be added. Any selection from any menus can be added to any toolbar.



Right click in an open space of the menu or toolbar and a menu will pop up. Click to uncheck or check the availability of the listed toolbars. Click *Customize*... to open the customization window.

Customize	×
Toolbars Commands Options	
Toolb <u>a</u> rs:	
Menu Bar	<u>N</u> ew
✓ Standard ✓ Database	
	Rename
	Delete
	Reset
	Close

The *Customize* window has three tabs. The *Toolbars* tab is where new toolbars can be added, existing toolbars can be renamed or reset to their default settings, or non-required toolbars can be deleted.

usto	mize			×
Cat Da Sta Vie To	− egorie tabase atus ew ols ports		otions Comman <u>d</u> s:	-
Sel		command: Description	Modify Selection ▼ <u>R</u> eset <u>D</u> elete <u>N</u> ame: Interloc&k Groups	ISE
			Default Style <u>T</u> ext Only (Always) Text <u>O</u> nly (in Menus) ✓ Image <u>a</u> nd Text Begin a <u>G</u> roup	

From the <u>Commands</u> tab items can be added to the toolbars. Make a selection from the <u>Categories</u> on the left, <u>Commands</u> will be shown on the right. Simply click and drag the appropriate command to its desired location on a toolbar.

Select a button on a toolbar and click <u>Modify Selection</u> or you can right click on the button. The menu revealed is used to modify the button itself. You can choose from image only (*Default Style*), text only, or both (*Image and Text*). *Reset* will change the button's setting back to their default values, and *Delete* will remove the button from the toolbar. Dragging a button off of a toolbar will also remove it. *Name* will give you the true name of the button while *Description* will show the displayed name. *Begin a Group* inserts a separator to the left of the button.

Customize	×
Toolbars Commands Options Personalized Menus and Toolbars	
<u>R</u> eset my usage data Other ☐ Large įcons	
Show ScreenTips on toolbars	
Show shortcut keys in ScreenTips	
Menu animations: (None)	
Close	

Select from:

 \square Me<u>n</u>us show recently used tools first.

 \square Show full menus after a short time.

- \square Large <u>I</u>cons.
- \blacksquare Show Screen Tips on toolbars.

 \square Show shortcut keys in Screen Tips.

Menu animation can be set as None, Random, Unfold, Slide, Explode, or FadeIn.

Add or Remove Buttons



AxiomV[™] User's Guide **126**

Only the two default toolbars will have the feature to add or remove buttons. There is a pull-down indicator (\checkmark) at the end of the standard or database toolbars, click on it. Move your cursor over the *Add or Remove Buttons* selection to open a list of buttons that can be easily added or removed. Simply click to check or uncheck selections. Buttons added under *Customize* will show on the list but will be grayed-out to show that they can only be changed under *Customize*.

Customize will open the same window as show above on page 124. *Reset Toolbar* will restore the selected toolbar back to default settings the same as the <u>*Reset*</u> selection under *Customize* does.



Module Selector

The Module Selector has two tabs, *System Status* and *Database*. Under *System Status* the operator can select which category of items to display in the *System Status Pane*. The list of choices is the same as the list in the *System Status* menu: Networks, NC100s, Device Controllers, Access Points, Inputs, Outputs, Access Point Groups, Input Groups, and Output Groups.

The Database tab gives the operator access to all the database modules available from the Database menu. These include, Cardholders, Access Levels, Operators, Database Profiles, Schedules, Holidays, Areas, Messages, AxiomLinksTM, Facility Codes, Access Point Groups, Input Groups, Output Groups, and Hardware Setup.

To switch from *System Status* items to *Database* items click the 'Database' box at the bottom of the *Module Selector*. The *Database* box will move up and the database items will be displayed. To switch back to *System Status* items from *Database* items click the 'System Status' box at the top of the *Module Selector*. The *Database* box will move down and the system status items will be displayed.



The scroll up and down buttons will reveal more selections if there isn't enough room to display all of the choices on the screen.

Status Bar

The Status Bar will display the name of the logged on operator.

Events Viewer

Date	Message	Device	Cardholder	4
25/06/2003 11:21:15 AM	1 Access granted: request	RC2\Reader1		
25/06/2003 11:21:15 AM	1 Output: on	RC2\Reader1Lock		
25/06/2003 11:21:15 AM	1 Input: restore	RC2\Reader1 RTE		
25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM	1 Input: abnormal	RC2\Reader1 Door Contact		
25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM	1 Input: normal	RC2\Reader1 Door Contact		
25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM	1 Output: off	RC2\Reader1Lock		
25/06/2003 11:21:16 AM	1 Output: off	RC2\Reader1 Alarm Shunt		
25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM	1 Access granted: reader	RC2\Reader2	(22700)	
25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM	1 Output: on	RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt		
25/06/2003 11:21:34 AM	1 Output: on	RC2\Reader2 Lock		
25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM	1 Door not open alarm	RC2\Reader2		
25/06/2003 11:21:43 AM	1 Output: off	RC2\Reader2 Alarm Shunt		
25/06/2003 11:21:44 AM	1 Output: off	RC2\Reader2 Lock		-

The *Event Viewer* displays the messages of events as they happen. These events are also logged to history for later retrieval. Which messages are displayed can be set for each operator.

The top messages can be locked so that scrolling up and down will not affect them. Move your curser to the line between the headers and the top message. When the curser changes (to $\frac{a}{=}$), click and hold the left mouse button. Then drag the line down to include all the lines to be locked (all messages above the line will not move during scrolling). To remove the lock drag the dividing line back up above the top message.

Right click a header in the event window to bring out the pop-up menu as shown below. Other pop-up menus will appear when you right click on a specific message. The menu items will correspond to the device in the selected message.

<mark>2</mark> ↓ Sort <u>A</u> scending Z↓ Sort <u>D</u> escending
<u>H</u> ide Column <u>F</u> reeze Column
<u>S</u> how All <u>U</u> nfreeze All
II Display Paused
X <u>⊂</u> lear

₽Ļ Sort Ascending

Click on Sort Ascending to sort the selected header ascending. Events in the monitor screen now appear sorted with the lowest value at the top.

Z↓ Sort Descending

Click on *Sort Descending* to sort the selected header descending. Events in the monitor screen now appear sorted with the highest value at the top.

Hide Column

Use *Hide Column* to hide the selected column from view, so that unnecessary information does not take up space on the monitor screen. Hidden columns can be brought back when their data becomes relevant again.

Freeze Column

Freeze Column is used to lock columns. These columns include the selected column and any columns to its left. Locked columns will not shift with left and right scrolling. The line separating the locked and non-locked columns can be shifted. Just click and drag the line to move it. Look for the curser to change (to [■]=) indicating the ability to move the dividing line.

Show All

To display all hidden columns, click on Show All. Unhiding only some columns is not directly possible. To achieve the same end result, unhide all columns and hide again the columns not required.

Unfreeze All

Unfreeze All will shift the column lock dividing line all the way to the left, thereby unlocking all columns.

Pause Display

New messages are always added to the bottom of the log display, and the log display is moved to show these messages as they come in. Select this option to hold the display on the desired messages and not automatically move to show the new messages just added.

Clear

н

Click here to permanently clear all events from the monitor screen, and to begin accumulating new events. Once events have been cleared, they will only be accessible through history reports.

Event Viewer Commands

Pop-up menus will appear when you right click on a specific event message. The menu items will correspond to the device in the selected message.

Standard Commands

Standard Commands are commands that are common to all items, although some commands are only available if the option has been configured. Where applicable commands can be executed as permanent, semi-permanent, or timed.





Click here to permanently clear all events from the event viewer screen. Once events have been cleared, they will only be accessible through history reports.



Configuration...

Choosing Configuration will take you into the properties window of the selected item. More detailed information is given in Chapter 7 Database.

Monitoring...

In Monitoring, alarms can be set to trigger, messages can be blocked and/or sent out as ASCII messages, and the status icons for the item can be changed.



Play

Selecting *Play* will start DVR playback for the selected item starting from the time stamp of the selected event. DVR and cameras must be configured for this command to function.

Live

Selecting Live will start live play of a camera configured for the selected item.

Send ASCII

Send ASCII will activate the message module for the selected item. This option must be configured for the item for the command to appear in the menu.

Pause Display

New messages are always added to the bottom of the log display, and the log display is moved to show these messages as they come in. Select this option to hold the display on the desired messages and not automatically move to show the new messages just added.



н

Print

Use *Print* to produce a printout of the current status of all selected items.

Status...

Status will bring up a status window as shown in System Status AccessPoints, see page 167.

NC-100 Commands

Version
Log Size
D- <u>N</u> et Errors
Set Date/Time
<u>G</u> et Date/Time
Initialize
Cl <u>e</u> ar Log
Clear <u>M</u> emory
Sc <u>h</u> edule Inquiry

Version

Version will return the firmware version of the selected NC100.

Log Size

Log Size will return the amount of memory the selected NC100 has to store event messages when it is not connected to the PC.

D-Net Errors

D-Net Errors will return the error count window for that NC100.

Set Date/Time

Set Date/Time is used to set the date and time for the selected NC100.

Get Date/Time

Get Date/Time: will return the current date and time in the selected NC100.

Initialize

Initialize will initialize the microprocessor of the selected NC100.

Clear Log

Clear Log will delete all messages from the selected NC100's log buffer.

Clear Memory

Clear Memory will remove all data in the selected NC100's RAM. This will include all database files and log messages.

Schedule Inquiry

Schedule Inquiry will return the status of all schedules for the selected NC100.

RC-2 & IOC-16 Commands

Test <u>B</u>attery

Test Battery

Test Battery is used to immediately have the battery tested on the selected device.

SafeSuiteTM Commands



Arm

Arm will arm the keypad of the selected apartment.

Disarm

Disarm will disarm the keypad of the selected apartment.

Forced Arm

Forced Arm will arm the keypad of the selected apartment even though one or more zone is in violation.

Default

This selection will reset the user codes of the panel back to default. User 1 is reset back to 1234 and the other seven are cleared.

Send Message

This button will pop up a small screen so that you can enter a text message to be sent to the Liquid Crystal Display of the panel. (See Send Message in System Status for more details.)

Access Points Commands

Grant <u>A</u> ccess	
<u>L</u> ock <u>U</u> nlock	
<u>S</u> et Mode <u>R</u> eset Mode	+

Grant Access

Grant Access will grant access at all selected access points.

Lock

Lock will lock at all selected access points.

Unlock

Unlock will unlock at all selected access points.

Set Mode and Reset Mode

Set Mode and Reset Mode are used to turn on or off different modes (<u>High Security, Two</u> Person, <u>Door Held Open</u>, <u>Interlock</u>, <u>Request to Exit Disabled</u>, Hard <u>Antipassback</u> Enabled, and <u>Facility Code</u>) on the selected access points.

Input Commands

<u>A</u>rm Input <u>D</u>isarm Input

<u>Arm Input</u>

Arm Input is used to arm the selected input.

Disarm Input

Disarm Input is used to disarm the selected input.

Outputs Commands

Turn O <u>n</u>	
Turn O <u>f</u> f	

Turn On

Turn On will turn all selected output on.

Turn Off

Turn Off will turn all selected output off.

System Status Pane

▼

The *System Status Pane* will display the current status of items from a selected group (inputs, outputs, access points, etc.). Operators can also send commands to the items displayed here as well as edit their configuration and monitoring parameters. Commands can be sent to a single item or a group of items. Highlight the desired items then right click on one of them to bring up the command menu. Clicking on a command will cause it to be executed for all highlighted items.



Use Search to display the required items.



Use *Clear* to remove any highlighted items that are no longer required.



Use *Refresh* to update the status of highlighted items.



Use *Print* to produce a printout of the status of all highlighted items.

System Status Commands Menus

Configuration...

Choosing *Configuration* will take you into the properties window of the selected item. This is where the properties of the item can be changed. Detailed information on the properties windows is given in Chapter 7 starting on page 184.

Monitoring...

Monitoring is where alarms and ASCII messages are configured. Status icon for the item can be changed here as well. More information on *Monitoring* is provided below.

Status...

The Status selection will bring up a detail status window for the selected item. More information is given on the detail windows in Chapter 6 starting on page 153.

Other menu selections for each item will be detailed in Chapter 6.

Monitoring

Each item has its own list of events. From this list each item can be selected and have the following parameters set.

Please note that not all tabs will be applicable for every item. Only the applicable tabs for the item will be provided, and all tabs are shown here for reference purposes.

ŧ	<u>د</u>	<
Alarms Events ASCII GlobalC	ommands Icons DVR	
	Monitoring Schedule Instructions Schedule On Message Off Message	
	Action Required Schedule	
	Cancel	

Alarms

Monitoring Schedule

Use the *Browse* button to select the *Schedule* during which this event is added to the *Alarm Queue*.

Instruction Schedule

Use the *Browse* button to select the *Schedule* during which this event will display an instruction message in the *Alarm Detail Window* of this event.

On Message

Select from the pull down list an instruction message to be displayed when the schedule is on.

Off Message

Select from the pull down list an instruction message to be displayed when the schedule is off.

Action Required Schedule

Use the *Browse* button to select the *Schedule* during which this *Alarm Event* can only be cleared if data has been entered into its *Action* box.

Priority

Give this Alarm Event a priority from 1 to 99.

Events

	×
Alarms Events ASCII GlobalCommands Icons DVR	
Event Blocking Schedule (Screen)	
Block Event Logging to History	
Ok Cancel	

Event Blocking Schedule

Use the *Browse* button to select the *Schedule* during which this item will not display messages on the *Event Viewer*.
ASCII

ŧ			×
Alarms Events ASCII GlobalC	ommands Icons DVR		
	Message Route message to selected ports	•	
	Port	Schedule	
	,		
		Ok Cancel	1

ASCII Message

Select from the pull down list an ASCII message to be transmitted when the event occurs.

Port Type

After selecting the message to be sent, select the method of sending that message from the list provided. You can send out the message from different ports, each on its own schedule.

Route message to selected ports				
Port	Schedule			
Message Port COM1				
Message Port TCP				
Message Port eMail				

Global Commands

	×
Alarms Events ASCII GlobalCommands Icons DVR	
Execute this link	
	Cancel

Execute this link

Select an event then click the browse button to find the link to be executed when the chosen event occurs

Global Commands are executed by the *CommsServer*. The event that triggers the link (*Global Command*) must be on a network connected to the same *CommsServer* that the network on which the link is being executed on is connected to.

Icons

ŧ		×
A	larms Events ASCII GlobalCommands Icons DVR	
		-
	Ok Cance	el

Click the browse button to change the status icon for the selected event. Some icons are provided with the system or you can create your own.

DVR

€	×
Alarms Events ASCII GlobalCommands Icons DVR	
Send ASCII Message To DVR	DVR Name
Camera Information Camera Number	History Settings Pre Event Time Post Event Time Sec V
<u></u>	Ok Cancel

Send ASCII Message to DVR

With 'Send ASCII Message to DVR' not selected the system can send messages to a known DVR to playback a camera associated with a specific device.

DVR Name

Select a DVR from the pull-down menu.

Camera Information

Camera Number

Enter the camera number associated with the chosen item that is attached to the above DVR. The video from this camera is to be played back to view alarms associated with this item.

DTZ Camera

Check here if this camera is mounted with Pan/Tilt/Zoom capability. PTZ cameras can be control with the DVR module.

History Settings

Pre Event Time:

For history playback from a DVR the *Pre Event Time* is the amount of time before the Event's time. A five second *Pre Event Time* will start the playback five seconds before the event.

Post Event Time:

The *Post Event Time* is how long the playback will run from the Event's time. A fifty-five second *Post Event Time* means that; the playback will continue for fifty-five seconds after the time of the event.

Send ASCII Message to DVR

Checking *Send ASCII Message to DVR* configures the system so that ASCII messages can be sent to the DVR. ASCII messages are messages created by the user. (For information on ASCII messages see *Messages* on page 202.)

ŧ.
Alarms Events ASCII GlobalCommands Icons DVR
Send ASCII Message To DVR
DVR Server I P Address
Port #
Camera C Label
C History
Ok Cancel

DVR Server IP Address

Enter the IP Address of the DVR associated with the chosen item.

Port

Enter the Port Number for the above IP address of the DVR.

Camera

Enter the camera number associated with the chosen item that is attached to the above DVR. The video from this camera is to be played back to view alarms associated with this item.

Label

When label is selected the *Alarm Event* message is sent to the DVR along with the time and date of the event, and the camera number. The DVR then plays back that camera from that time/date displaying the Alarm event message on the video screen.

History

When *History* is selected, only the time and date of the event, and the camera number are sent to the DVR. The DVR then plays back that camera from that time/date.



Cards Monitor

The *Cards Monitor Screen* will display cardholders (*First Name, Last Name*, and *Card Number*), the area the cardholder is in, the last reader the cardholder presented their card to, and the time they presented their card at that reader. The system first has to have areas created and access points need to be configured with those areas before this information can be displayed.



Areas

Cardholders can be selected and sorted by Areas, as chosen in the Search Window.

🜐 Axiom¥ Cards Monit	or					1
_ <u>F</u> ile						
🛛 🕄 🔛 🖊 🗙 🎯						
]
Area	Count	Card Number	Last Name	First Name	Time	
🖃 🚮 Entering	5					
		 1861 1891 1857 1865 1895 	Shah Riarh Test Janda Michael	Govind Jinder Card 1857 Michelle Anna	18/Aug/2003 4:54:30 PM 18/Aug/2003 3:02:13 PM 18/Aug/2003 10:24:26 AM 13/Aug/2003 10:10:14 AM 12/Aug/2003 11:24:26 AM	
Exit Somputer, fax room	0 1	54 1868	Michael	Anna	10/Aug/2003 11:51:53 AM	
			- Normal of			

Cards

Display cardholders from the selection made in the Search Window

🖶 Axiom¥ Cards Monitor							
<u>F</u> ile							
🛃 🏭 🖊	N 🗙 🎒						
Card Number	LastName	FirstName	Time	Area	Reader	Usage Count	
2375	Mumford	Jane	2-Nov-2005 11:22:42 am		Reader 1 Direct		
2394	Aubrey	Douglas	24-Oct-2005 10:55:52 am		Reader 2 Direct		
2395	Roback	Francis	24-Oct-2005 10:56:54 am		Reader 2 Direct		
20941	Durnst	Sonia	2-Nov-2005 11:22:57 am		Reader 1 Direct	0	
20945	Greene	Victoria	2-Nov-2005 11:23:12 am		Reader 2 Direct	0	
58094 38094	Dumka	Helen	24-Oct-2005 10:56:56 am		Reader 2 Direct		
53080	Barnett	Amanda	2-Nov-2005 11:53:06 am		Reader 2 Direct	11	
꽥 53087	Barnett	Brent	1-Nov-2005 11:58:24 am		Reader 2 Direct		•

RBH Access Technologies Inc.

Alarms Monitor

The *Alarms Monitor Screen* will list all of the <u>Alarms</u> to be acknowledged and cleared. <u>Alarms</u> are events that are significant enough to require operator intervention. (E.g. a 'Door Held Open Alarm' might not be important enough to require the attention of the operator.) Access Point and Input states with the word 'alarm' in then are not necessarily <u>Alarm</u> events. Which events are <u>Alarms</u> is set in *Monitoring* of each individual item.

The Alarm Monitoring screen will maintain its view when an alarm is selected so that new alarms coming in won't affect the operator's ability to handle the selected alarm.

🜐 Axiom¥ Alarms Monito	or					
🖌 ँ 🗙 🖳 🕘	😭 💽					
Date	Message			Operator	Priority	Instructions
8-Jun-2004 8:29:55 AM	Input: alarm RC2-154	1 2/	Toput 1	rbh	2	
8-Jun-2004 8:30:30 AM	Forced entry alarm R	•	<u>A</u> cknowledge		1	
8-Jun-2004 8:35:41 AM	Input: alarm RC2-154				4	
8-Jun-2004 8:36:50 AM	Input: alarm RC2-154	X	Clear	dave	2	
8-Jun-2004 8:36:55 AM	Input: alarm RC2-154	-		dave	1	
8-Jun-2004 8:39:36 AM	Device controller: bal	R	, Details		6	
8-Jun-2004 8:43:10 AM	Input: alarm RC2-154		Print		3	
8-Jun-2004 8:44:09 AM	Device controller: bal			dave	6	
8-Jun-2004 8:45:33 AM	Device controller: bal		History		6	
		П	Pause Alarms			
			Configuration			
			-			
			Monitoring			
			Arm			
			Disarm			
		-	Live			
		-	Play			
			Send ASCII			
		Q	Status			

Standard Commands





Acknowledge

Acknowledge is the first step in handling <u>Alarms</u>. All queued <u>Alarms</u> must be acknowledged to turn off the <u>Alarms</u>' audible. Acknowledged <u>Alarms</u> will be shown in green.

Unacknowledge

Only the operator that *acknowledged* an <u>Alarm</u> can *clear* the <u>Alarm</u>. Therefore in order to change operators, an <u>Alarm</u> must first be unacknowledged, so that another operator can acknowledge it.



Clear

Clear is the final step in handling <u>Alarms</u>. When an <u>Alarm</u> is cleared all data pertaining to that <u>Alarm</u> is saved. <u>Alarm</u> reports can be generated from the *History Reports Screen*.



Only the operator that acknowledged the alarm can clear the alarm. It is important therefore that an operator is not deleted if that operator has outstanding acknowledged alarms, because you won't be able to clear the alarms (not even by re-creating the operator).



Details

Alarm Details provides a place where instructions messages can be located. It also provides a space for the operator to enter what action was taken in regards to this <u>Alarm</u>. Instruction and Action messages are included in the *Alarm Report*.

Alarm Details	×
V OX	
General	
Date Age Status 15-Jun-2004 10:26:40 AM 218 sec. Acknowledged	
Alarm	
Input: alarm	
Instructions	
Actions Taken	
Ok Cance	el

An <u>Alarm</u> can be acknowledged, unacknowledged, or cleared from the *Details Window*.



Print

Use *Print* to produce a printout of selected alarms.

History

Clicking History will produce a report of up to the last ten events that occurred for the selected item(s) for the current date.

Pause Alarms

Like the *Events Viewer* the *Alarm Monitor Screen* shifts down to the bottom of the queue to displays all new incoming alarms/messages. *Pause Alarms* will freeze the *Alarm Screen* view so that this won't happen. Incoming alarms will not then hinder the operator from handling alarms that already exist in the queue.

1.	١
04	1

Configuration...

Configuration will call up the configuration window for the device associated with the selected alarm event.

Monitoring...

Monitoring will call up the monitoring window for the device associated with the selected alarm event.

Live

Selecting Live will start live play of a camera configured for the selected item.



Play

Selecting *Play* will start DVR playback for the selected item starting from the time stamp of the selected event. DVR and cameras must be configured for this command to function.

Send ASCII

Send ASCII will trigger the sending of the appropriate ASCII message for the selected alarm. This option will only show up for items that have previously been programmed for *ASCII Messages*.



Status...

Status will call up the detail status window for the device associated with the selected alarm event.

Maps Display

The *Maps Display* can provide a graphical view of system status. Maps are first created in *MapMaker* to display specific items in a graphic view.

Select Map	
The list contains maps defined in the Axiom sy Show button to display the map.	estem. Select a map from the list to preview it. Click
M3290.emf	Print Status Show Close

Click on *Maps Display* and select one of the maps from the list by highlighting the map's name and clicking *Show*.

🕒 Map 1			
Refresh Eind	Semi-permanent 🔹	-0-0- <u>A</u> rm	<u>D</u> isarm
Input 1a			
	Disarmed - Normal Disarmed - Norma Disarmed - Normal Disarmed - No		
	J		
	,		

Icons for each item will change as that item's status changes. You can also **right-click** on an icon and the system will produce a command list. The commands for each item are listed in Chapter 6 System Status.



If *Commands Toolbar* is activated the associated commands for an icon will appear above the map in the toolbar. Only the last selected icon's commands will be on the toolbar.

Alarms can also be handled from the *Maps Display*. A red box will appear around the item in alarm. **Right-click** on the icon and the command list will include alarm handling selections (acknowledge, unacknowledged, and clear). Alarm handling is not available from the *Commands Toolbar*.

Map 1 Map 1 Refresh Input 1 b	Semi-permanent 🔹				
	-8	Input 1b: Armed	• Normal	_	
			Alarms Arm Disarm	σ	<u>A</u> cknowledge Unacknowledge <u>C</u> lear
			Configuration Monitoring		Acknowledge All Unacknowledge All Clear All
			History Live Play History		Details
L _			Status		
Input 1b - Alarms:1		J			

Chapter 6 System Status

This chapter describes how to use the *System Status* pane in the AxiomVTM system. Operators can view the status of item in the system and execute commands on those items. Selections can be made from the *Module Selector*, *Menu*, or *Toolbar*.



Networks

Networks

Net	works			
#	🕯 🗙 🔯 🎒			
Des	scription	Туре	Status	
1	Direct Network	Direct	Connected	
15	Network 152	TCP/IP	Connected	
15	Network 156	TCP/IP	Connected	
1	Network 154	TCP/IP	Connected	

Right click on a network to bring up the command menu.

 Configuration Monitoring
Print <u>H</u> istory



Configuration...

Choosing *Configuration* will take you into the properties window of the selected item. More detailed information on the Network Properties window is given in Chapter 7.



Monitoring...

The following list of events for an NC100 can be set in *Monitoring* to trigger alarms and/or send ASCII messages.

- Network Online
- Network Offline
- Controller Online
- Controller Offline
- NC100 Trouble
- NC100 Restore
- Device Trouble
- Device Restore



Print

Use *Print* to produce a printout of the current status of all selected items.

History

Clicking History will produce a report of up to the last ten events that occurred for the selected item(s) for the current date.



See Chapter 5 System Status Pane – Monitoring for more information on the monitoring parameters.

NC100s

NC100s



Version

Version will return the firmware version of the selected NC100s

Log Size

Log Size will return the amount of memory the selected NC100s have to store event messages when they are not connected to the PC.

D-Net Errors

D-Net Errors will return the error count window for that NC100.

Set Date/Time

Set Date/Time is used to set the date and time for the selected NC100s.

Get Date/Time

Get Date/Time: will return the current date and time in the selected NC100s.

Download

Download: will send all database files to the selected NC100s.



<u>C</u>ard Dump

Card Dump is a diagnostic tool used to verify card data.

🗧 Card Dump	- 🗆 🗵
50 Bits. Interval = 255. 000001111101000000000000	00000
00000001001110001000 50 Bits. Interval = 62.0000011111010000000000000 0001110110010101001	00000

The card data (in binary) will be displayed after the card is read.



<u>F</u>irmware Upgrade

Firmware Upgrade is used to change the firmware in the NC-100. It may be necessary to browse your machine or network depending on where the firmware file is being stored. All firmware files end with the extension **rbh**.

Select Firmware	upgrade file		? ×
Look jn:	🔄 bin	💌 🗧 🖆 📰 -	
istory History Desktop	In v712u.rbh In v713u.rbh In v714u.rbh In v714u.rbh		
My Documents			
My Computer	File <u>n</u> ame: Files of <u>type</u> :	v714u NC100 Firmware Files (*.rbh) Open as read-only	<u>O</u> pen Cancel

RBH Access Technologies Inc.

Device Firmware Upgrade

All of the *Device Firmware Upgrades* start the same as the NC100 *Firmware Upgrade*. First you select the firmware file (by browsing, just like the NC100 *Firmware Upgrade*), and then you have to select the range of addresses of the devices that are to be upgraded. The file is first sent down to the NC100, and then to the devices from the NC100 after the file type has been verified.

Elect Device Addess	×
Start Address	
Ok Cancel	

Select the starting address and the ending address. These are the addresses of the devices (RC2s, IOC16s, <u>or</u> UC100s) that will have their firmware upgraded (inclusive). When you select *RC2 Firmware Upgrade* you will only be allowed to select addresses 1 to 4. Selecting *IOC16 Firmware Upgrade* will allow only addresses from 5 to 20 to be selected. While the selection of *UC100 Firmware Upgrade* allows addresses form 1 to 255. If you try to upgrade a device with the wrong type of firmware the upgrade will not proceed, and the message will indicate that there is a file type mismatch.

All UC100 (SafeSuite[™]) firmware is upgradeable, but only RC2 v40+ and IRC16 v40+ are upgradeable. Earlier versions still require a chip change.

Initialize

Initialize will initialize the microprocessor of all selected NC100s.

Clear Log

Clear Log will delete all messages from the selected NC100s log buffer.

Clear Memory

Clear Memory will remove all data in the selected NC100s' RAM. This will include all database files and log messages.

Schedule Inquiry

Schedule Inquiry will return the status of all schedules for all selected NC100s.



Configuration...

Choosing *Configuration* will take you into the properties window of the selected item. More detailed information on the NC100 Properties window is given in Chapter 7.



Print

Use *Print* to produce a printout of the current status of all selected items.

History

Clicking History will produce a report of up to the last ten events that occurred for the selected item(s) for the current date.



Status...

NC100 1-1	×
🔗 🖌 🔛	
General	
Status Online - Normal	
Firmware Version Log Size	Memory Size
Cabinet Tamper	
Normal	
,	
	Close

Command Buttons



Clear Memory

This command will delete the entire memory of the NC100.



<u>Initialize</u>

This command will re-boot the NC100's processor.



Clear Log

This command will be delete all of the logged history in the NC100.

Status

Status will display the current status of the NC100 (e.g. Online – Normal).

Firmware Version

Firmware will display the firmware version of the NC100.

Log Size

Log Size will display the amount of memory available to log history events.

Memory Size

Memory Size will display the memory capacity of the NC100 (256k, 1M).

Cabinet Tamper

Cabinet Tamper will display the status of the NC100's cabinet tamper input.

Device Controllers

Devices

Version
Test <u>B</u> attery
슈퍼 Configuration
🖨 Print
History
🚺 Status

Version

Version will return the firmware version of the selected devices.

Test Battery

Test Battery is used to immediately have the batteries tested on all selected devices.



Configuration...

Choosing *Configuration* will take you into the properties window of the selected item. More detailed information on the RC2 Properties window and the IOC16 Properties window is given in Chapter 7.



Print

Use *Print* to produce a printout of the current status of all selected items.



History

Clicking History will produce a report of up to the last ten events that occurred for the selected item(s) for the current date.



Status...

RC2

RC2 1-1-1						×
General						
X	Status Online - Tr	ouble				1
Firmware Ver:	sion	Battery		А	c	
35		Failed		M	lormal	
Auxiliary Fuse	•		Reader Fus	е		
Normal			Normal			
D-NET CH-1			D-NET CH-	2		
Normal			Normal			
Cabinet Tamp	ber		Fire Input			
Normal			Normal			
					Close	e]

Command Buttons



Battery Test

This command will immediately test the battery of the RC2.

Firmware Version

The RC2's firmware version will be displayed here.

Battery

Battery will display the status of the RC2's battery (normal or failed).

<u>AC</u>

AC will display the status of the RC2's 16vac input (normal, high or low).

Auxiliary Fuse

Auxiliary Fuse will display the status of the RC2's auxiliary power fuse (normal or failed).

Reader Fuse

Reader Fuse will display the status of the RC2's reader power fuse (normal or failed).

D-Net CH1

D-Net CH1 will display the status of communication channel 1 of the RC2's D-Net (normal or failed).

D-Net CH2

D-Net CH2 will display the status of communication channel 2 of the RC2's D-Net (normal or failed).

Cabinet Tamper

Cabinet Tamper will display the status of the RC2's cabinet tamper input.

Fire Signal

Fire Signal will display the status of the RC2's fire signal input (normal or failed).

IOC16

DC16 2-1-1-5	×
General Control Contro	
Status Dnline - Normal	
Firmware Version Battery AC 31 Normal Normal	
Auxiliary Fuse	
Normal	
D-NET CH-1 D-NET CH-2	
Normal	
Cabinet Tamper Fire Input	
Normal	
Close	

Command Buttons

•

Battery Test

This command will immediately test the battery of the IOC16.

Firmware Version

The IOC16's firmware version will be displayed here.

Battery

Battery will display the status of the IOC16's battery (normal or failed).

<u>AC</u>

AC will display the status of the IOC16's 16vac input (normal, high or low).

Auxiliary Fuse

Auxiliary Fuse will display the status of the IOC16's auxiliary power fuse (normal or failed).

D-Net CH1

D-Net CH1 will display the status of communication channel 1 of the IOC16's D-Net (normal or failed).

D-Net CH2

D-Net CH2 will display the status of communication channel 2 of the IOC16's D-Net (normal or failed).

Cabinet Tamper

Cabinet Tamper will display the status of the IOC16's cabinet tamper input.

Fire Signal

Fire Signal will display the status of the IOC16's fire signal input (normal or failed).

Access Points

AccessPoints



Grant Access

Grant Access will grant access at all selected access points.

Lock

Lock will lock at all selected access points.

Unlock

Unlock will unlock at all selected access points.

Set Mode and Reset Mode

Set Mode and Reset Mode are used to turn on or off different modes (<u>High Security, Two</u> Person, <u>D</u>oor Held Open, <u>Interlock</u>, <u>R</u>equest to Exit Disabled, Hard <u>A</u>ntipassback Enabled, and <u>F</u>acility Code) on the selected access points.

₩3

Configuration...

Choosing *Configuration* will take you into the properties window of the selected item. More detailed information on the Access Point Properties window is given in Chapter 7.

Monitoring...

The following list of events for an Access Point can be set in *Monitoring* to trigger alarms, to block message, and/or to send ASCII messages.

- Access Granted
- Access Denied
- Door Not Open
- Door Held Open
- Forced Entry
- Tamper
- Secure

In addition, the status icons for the Access Point can be changed here.



Print

Use *Print* to produce a printout of the current status of all selected items.

History

Clicking History will produce a report of up to the last ten events that occurred for the selected item(s) for the current date.



Status...

Command Buttons



Grant Access

This command will immediately execute a grant access on the access point.

Lock

This command will immediately lock the access point.

<u>Unlock</u>

This command will immediately unlock the access point.

RC2 1-1-1\Reader1	×
🖉 🖪 😽 Semi-permanent 💌	
General	
Status Locked - Normal	
Туре	
Access	
Modes 🖌 🗶	
 High Security Hard APB Two Person Code Tracing DHO Warning Facility Code Mode Interlock Reader Required Keypad Required Disable RTE 	
Clos	e

Status

Status will display the current status of the Access Point (e.g. Locked – Normal).

<u>Type</u>

Type will indicate this access point's type.

Mode

Mode will show (via the LED icons) which access point modes are on and which are off. These modes can be turned on and off by highlighting the mode and either clicking the green check (on) or the red ex (off).



Mode List:

- High Security
- Two Person
- DHO Warning
- Interlock
- Reader
 - Required

- Keypad Required
- Disable RTE
- Hard APB
- Code Tracing
- Facility Code Mode

Inputs

Inputs

<u>A</u> rm Input <u>D</u> isarm Input
₩ Configuration P Monitoring
 Print History
🚺 Status

Arm Input

Arm Input is used to arm the selected inputs.

Disarm Input

Disarm Input is used to disarm the selected inputs.



Configuration...

Choosing *Configuration* will take you into the properties window of the selected item. More detailed information on the Input Properties window is given in Chapter 7.



Print

Use *Print* to produce a printout of the current status of all selected items.



History

Clicking History will produce a report of up to the last ten events that occurred for the selected item(s) for the current date.



Monitoring...

The following list of events for an Input can be set in *Monitoring* to trigger alarms, to block message, and/or to send ASCII messages.

• Alarm, Restore, Abnormal, Normal, & Trouble

In addition, the status icons for the Input can be changed here.



Status...

RC2\Inpu	ıt 4	x
	Semi-permanent 💌	
General]	
-	Status Armed - Normal	
Typ Ge	neral Purpose	

Command Buttons



-**-**⁄-

This command will immediately arm the input.

<u>Disarm</u>

This command will immediately disarm the input.

<u>Status</u>

Status will display the current status of the input (e.g. Armed – Normal).

Type

Type will indicate this input's type.

Outputs

Outputs

	Turn O <u>n</u> Turn O <u>f</u> f
	Set Counter
	Configuration Monitoring
_	Print History
٥	Status

Turn On

Turn On will turn all selected outputs on.

Turn Off

Turn Off will turn all selected outputs off.

Set Counter

Set Counter will set the current level of the count for all selected outputs



Configuration...

Choosing *Configuration* will take you into the properties window of the selected item. More detailed information on the Output Properties window is given in Chapter 7.



Monitoring...

The following list of events for an Output can be set in *Monitoring* to trigger alarms, to block message, and/or to send ASCII messages.

• On, Off

In addition, the status icons for the Output can be changed here.



Print

Use *Print* to produce a printout of the current status of all selected items.



History

Clicking History will produce a report of up to the last ten events that occurred for the selected item(s) for the current date.



Status...

IOC16 2-1	I-1-5\Output 1	×
😿 🖗	Semi-permanent 💌	
General	1	
Ø	Status Off	
Type	eral Purpose	
L N	formally Energized	
	Counter Operation Value 2	
	Close	

Command Buttons



<u>On</u>

This command will immediately turn on the output.



<u>Off</u>

This command will immediately turn off the output.

<u>Status</u>

Status will display the current status of the input (e.g. Armed – Normal).

Type

Type will indicate this input's type.

Apartments

Apartments

	Arm
	Disarm
	Forced Arm
	Default
	Send Message
₩ 3	Configuration
P	Monitoring
5	Print
•	<u>H</u> istory
٥	Status

Arm

Arm will arm the keypad(s) of the selected apartment(s).

Disarm

Disarm will disarm the keypad(s) of the selected apartment(s).

Forced Arm

Forced Arm will arm the keypad(s) of the selected apartment(s) even though one or more zone is in violation.

Set User

Set User will allow the operator to set user codes in the SafeSuite[™] panels.

🗧 Select Keypad User Code	<u>?</u> ×
User Index	
📑 🗖 Card	
User Code Site Code	
Ok Cancel	

User Index

Select the user (1-8) whose code you wish to set.

User Code

Enter the code for that user.

Card

Check this box if you are actually entering a card number and not a user code. Limited card formats are available through this function; other formats can be used by inputting the card data directly at the reader.

Site Code

If a card number is being entered, input the appropriate site code for that card here.

Default

This selection will reset the user codes of the panel back to default. User 1 is reset back to 1234 and the other seven are cleared.

Send Message

This button will pop up a small screen so that you can enter a text message to be sent to the Liquid Crystal Display of the panel. (See below for more details.)



Configuration...

Choosing *Configuration* will take you into the properties window of the selected item. More detailed information on Keypads given in Chapter 7.



Monitoring...

The following list of events for an *Apartment* can be set in *Monitoring* to trigger alarms, to block message, and/or to send ASCII messages.

- Zone Restore
- Zone Alarm
- Zone Trouble
- Zone Shunted
- Zone Unshunted
- Zone Arm/Disarm
- User Commands
- Keypad Messages
- Keypad Alarm

In addition, the status icons for the *Apartment* can be changed here.



Print

Use Print to produce a printout of the current status of all selected items.


History

Clicking History will produce a report of up to the last ten events that occurred for the selected item(s) for the current date.



Status...

New Apartment		×
🔝 🔝 🔜 🛅 Ser	ni-permanent 🔹 🔻	
General		
Status Disarmed - t Zones and Outputs	Normal	
Zone1Enterance	Normal	
Zone2 Window	Normal	
-Zone3 Exterior	Normal	
Zone4 Follower	Normal	
Zone 5	Normal	
≁ •Zone 6	Normal	
✓•Zone 7	Normal	
Zone 8	Normal	
🔍 Output 1	Off	
🕘 Output 2	Off	
🔍 Output 3	Off	



Armed Away

This button will arm the panel in the Away Mode.



<u>Disarm</u>

This button will disarm the panel.



Forced Arm

This button will arm the panel in the Away Mode even if one or more zones are in violation.

Default

This button will reset the user codes of the panel back to default. User 1 is reset back to 1234 and the other seven are cleared.

¥	£Δ	
	B 1000	
	-	

Message

This button will pop up a small screen so that you can enter a text message to be sent to the Liquid Crystal Display of the panel. Two lines of sixteen characters each can be typed in, or predefined *Instruction Messages* may be selected. After typing in or selecting the message click *Send*.

🕀 Send mess	age	? 🗙
Line 1	Select Message	
Line 2		
	Send	ncel



Messages can only be sent to LCD panels, LED panels cannot display messages.

Status

Status will display the armed and alarm status of the panel.

Zones and Outputs

Set Mode On

Set Mode On will shunt zones and turn on outputs.



Set Mode Off

Set Mode Off will unshunt zones and turn off outputs.

Highlight the desired zone(s) or output(s) then click Set Mode On or Set Mode Off.

Access Point Groups

AccessPoint Groups

AccessPoint Groups								
🕅 🗮 😰 🕼 🖉 Semi-p	ermanent 🔹							
	Network Name	Acces	ss Point Name	Status	Туре		Device Name	NC100 Name
🖃 🖬 🛛 Access Point Group	Repair Bench							
		B R	Reader 1	Locked - Normal	Access	2049	RC2	NC100 A
		B R	Reader 2	Locked - Normal	Access	2050	RC2	NC100 A
		B R	Reader 3	Locked - Normal	Access	4233	NRC	NC100 B
		🖪 R	Reader 4	Locked - Normal	Access	4234	NRC	NC100 B

Lock Unlock		
<u>S</u> et Mode	Þ	High Security
<u>R</u> eset Mode	•	<u>T</u> wo Person Mode
👬 Configuration		<u>D</u> HO Warning
	-	Interlock
🖨 Print		<u>R</u> TE Disabled
		Hard <u>A</u> PB Enabled
		Eacility Code

Lock

Lock will lock all selected access points groups

Unlock

Unlock: will unlock all selected access points groups.

Set Mode and Reset Mode

Set Mode and Reset Mode are used to turn on or off different modes (<u>High Security, Two</u> Person, <u>Door Held Open</u>, <u>Interlock</u>, <u>Request to Exit Disabled</u>, Hard <u>Antipassback</u> Enabled, and <u>Facility Code</u>) on the selected access points.



Configuration...

Choosing *Configuration* will take you into the properties window of the selected item. More detailed information on AccessPoint Groups is given in Chapter 7.



Print

Use *Print* to produce a printout of the current status of all selected items.



Commands can be sent to the group or to individual members.

AccessPoint Groups						
🕅 🗙 😰 🎒 Semi-r	permanent 🔹					
Description	Network Name	Access Point Name	Status	Туре	Device Name	NC100 Name
🛨 🚹 Access Point Group	Repair Bench					
1						

The minus sign will to hide the group members and the plus sign will reveal them.

Input Groups

Input Groups

<u>A</u> rm Input
<u>D</u> isarm Input
_ 슈퍼 Configuration
🖨 Print

<u>Arm Input</u>

Arm Input is used to arm the selected input groups.

Disarm Input

Disarm Input is used to disarm the selected input groups.



Configuration...

Choosing *Configuration* will take you into the properties window of the selected item. More detailed information on Input Groups is given in Chapter 7.



Print

Use *Print* to produce a printout of the current status of all selected items.

Output Groups

Output Groups

Turn O <u>n</u> Turn O <u>f</u> f
_ 슈퍼 Configuration
🖨 Print

Turn O<u>n</u>

Turn On will turn all selected outputs on.

Turn Off

Turn Off will turn all selected outputs off.



Configuration...

Choosing *Configuration* will take you into the properties window of the selected item. More detailed information on Output Groups is given in Chapter 7.



Print

Use *Print* to produce a printout of the current status of all selected items.

Guard Tours¹²

Guard Tours

	۲	Start Tour
		Suspend Tour
1	} ⊒	Configuration
ĺ	٥	Status



Start Tour

Start Tour will immediately start the tour manually.



Suspend Tour

Suspend Tour will immediately stop the tour manually.



Configuration

Choosing *Configuration* will take you into the properties window of the selected item. More detailed information on Guard Tours is given in Chapter 7.



Status

Status will display the current status of the selected guard tour.

¹² This selection is only available if the optional license for the Guard Tour Software has been purchased and installed.

e rd T	our #1	Status Guard Tou	ur Started	Start Time 21 Feb 2006 2:30:00 P	М
	Access Point	Status	Time	Name	
	Main Entrance				1
	Employee Entrance				100
	Warehouse Entranc				
4	Shipping Entrance				100 H

Guard Tour Status can show you if the tour has started and if so when. It can show which guard has reached which access points and when. With the DVR module setup the *Guard Tour Status* can access live views from cameras associated with access points in the tour.

Refresh

Refresh

Refresh will re-query all highlighted items and update their status on the display.

Part 5

Chapter 7 Database

Chapter 7 Database

This chapter describes how to program the AxiomVTM system *Database* parameters. Typically the System Administrator performs this function. Make a selection from the *Module Selector*, *Menu*, or *Toolbar*.



۲	AxiomV Security System	- SALES DEMO ALL	
E	ile <u>V</u> iew System <u>S</u> tatus	<u>D</u> atabase <u>T</u> ools <u>R</u> eports <u>H</u> elp	
	S 6	🍖 Operator <u>P</u> rofiles	
	Log Off <u>Events</u>	2 Operators	nitor <u>C</u> ards Monitor Maps E
	k 1 🛦 🛇 🖪 鬥	🌲 <u>H</u> olidays	i 🏭 🗇 🗊 🖼 🔏 🔌 🦒
r	System Status	Schedules	
	and the second s	Areas	
		Messages	
	Networks	🌇 <u>H</u> ardware Setup	
		Elevators	
		Floor Groups	
	NC100s	Device <u>G</u> roups	AccessPoint Groups
		Access Levels	Input Groups Input Groups Input Groups
		Companies	Interlock Groups
	Device Controllers	Cardholders	
		炉 Cardholder <u>T</u> ypes	
	V	Cardholder <u>R</u> eader Access	
	Access Points		
	1	Departments	
	-	Finger Print Readers	
	Inputs	Finger Print Reader Query	
		🔏 Visitors	
	•	🐂 AxiomLinks	
	Outputs	🥔 Global Commands	
		Facility Codes	
	**	👼 Message Ports	
	Apartments	™ DVR	
		🗑 Guard Tour 🔹 🕨	ैਊ Tour Routes
	0.0		- 🧟 Guard Groups
	AccessPoint Groups		🗑 Guard Tours
🏂 🏦 😵 🕺 🛱	ין 🖏 🚇 🎹 🗱 🏂 🕯	🔊 🅦 沿 🚼 🏭 🗇 🗊 🔒	🍰 📏 🌌 🛅 🏂 🖼 🛛 🗛 🗛
System Status	Events Viewer		Cip Tour Routes
a construction of the second s	1		😰 Guard Groups
	Date	Message	Dev Guard Tours
Networks			

RBH Access Technologies Inc.

Operator Profiles

Operator Profiles set the privileges for the operators. Create as many profiles as required. The Master Profile can be renamed but otherwise cannot be edited.

😘 Operator Security Profiles		×
📔 New 📑 Edit 🗝 Cancel 🗙 Delete 📴 Copy 👫 Eind 🔲 View		
Name		
Master Profile		
Devices Cardholders System Messages Modules Commands V NC100 Networks V Network 1 (direct) V Network 2 (TCP/IP 152) V Network 3 (TCP/IP 156) V Network 4 (TCP/IP 154)		
<\	⊳	DI

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Devices

From the *Devices* tab the operator can be restricted in which device they can see and interact with in the system. The operator can be restricted by networks, panel, access points, or even inputs and outputs. Only items that are selected here will be available to the operator.

🚱 Operator Security Profiles	- IX
🎦 New 📴 Edit 🗝 Cancel 🗙 Delete 📴 Copy 🖓 Eind 🗐 View	
Name	
Dave Profile	
Devices Cardholders System Messages Modules Commands	1
E-V NC100 Networks	
E Network 1 (direct)	
ÈM Panels	
É⊠ NC100 1-1 È⊠ RC-2s	
□ □ □ □ □ □ □ □ □ □ □ □ □ □ □ □ □ □ □	
i i	
Inputs ⊡	
i ⊡…⊡ IOC-16s ⊡…⊠ Network 2 (TCP/IP 152)	
Panels	
E NC100 2-2	
BC-2s	
	-
< ↓ 13 of 13	D DI

Cardholders

From the *Cardholders* tab the operator can be restricted by which groups of cardholders are available to them. Cardholders are grouped in Companies and operators can be given limited access to the cardholder by not giving them every company.

😘 Operator Security Profiles	<u> </u>
🎦 New 📑 Edit 🖙 Cancel 🗙 Delete 🗈 Copy 🖓 Eind 🗐 View	
Name	
Master Profile	
Devices Cardholders System Messages Modules Commands	1
 ✓ Master Company ✓ Production1 ✓ Testing ✓ warehouse 3 ✓ Net4 ✓ Net5 ✓ Advanced 	
⟨	D DI

System Messages

The *System Messages* tab not only allows the restriction of messages the operator can see but also provides the ability to play a .wav file when the message appears. The sound can help alert the operator when certain events happen.

💮 Operator Security Profiles	
🎦 New 🖳 Edit 🕫 Cancel 🗶 Delete 🖻 Copy 🏘 Eind 💷 View	
Name	
Master Profile	
Devices Cardholders System Messages Modules Commands	
Cardholder Messages	<u> </u>
AccessPoint Messages	
🗄 🖂 🗹 Input Messages	
Input: restore	
Input: alarm	
Input: trouble	
Input: illegal	
Input: normal	
Input: abnormal	
Input armed	
Input disarmed	
Er I Output Messages	
Output: off	
Output: on	
Output: counter incremented	
Sound File	
< ↓ ↓ 1 of 13	\triangleright \triangleright I

Modules

From the *Modules* tab the operators' access to the software can be restricted. They can be given No Access, View Only, or Full Access to sections of the software.

🚱 Operator Security Profiles	
🎦 New 📑 Edit 🕫 Cancel 🗶 Delete 🖻 Copy 🏘 Find	d 📰 View
Name	
Dave Profile	
Devices Cardholders System Messages Modules Commands	1
Module Name	Ассезз Туре 🔺
Access Levels	Full Access
Alarms Monitor	Full Access
Areas	No Access
Badge Maker	View Only
Cardholders	Full Access
Cards Monitor	Full Access
Companies	Full Access
Copy Wizard	Full Access
Custom Fields	No Access
Database Reports	Full Access
Departments	Full Access
Device Groups	View Only
Devices (Access Points, Inputs and Outputs)	View Only
⟨ ⟨ 2 of 2	D DI

Commands

From the *Commands* tab the operator can be restricted to perform only certain commands. These commands of course can only be executed on devices selected in the *Devices* tab.

🚱 Operator Security Profiles	_ 🗆 X
New 🌗 Edit 🕫 Cancel 🗙 Delete 🖻 Copy 👫 Eind 🗐 View	
Name	
Master Profile	
Devices Cardholders System Messages Modules Commands	
Get Version	
Get CNet Errors	
Get DNet Errors	
Set Date/Time	
Get Date/Time	
Download	
Initialize	
Clear Log	
Clear Memory	
Time Group Inquiry	
Device Controllers AccessPoints	
Arm Input	
Disarm Input	
	-1
< < < < < < < < < < < < <	\triangleright \triangleright

Operators

From the Operators Screen the following can be done:

- Create and manage operator accounts for the AxiomVTM system
- Set the operator's logon password
- Set the operator's language preference.

Operator rights are defined by Operator Security Profiles (which are created elsewhere).

The *built-in administrative account* cannot be deleted. It can be edited by changing its name, its password, or its language but its profile cannot be changed (there must be at least one operator with full access).

🔅 Operators		
🎦 🛯 🔤 🔁 🔁 🎦 🎦 🎦 🎽	🕻 Delete 🛛 🖻 Copy 🛛 🊧 Eind 🖉 Tiew	
Name	Login ID	
built-in administrative account	rbh	
Password		

🗢 – Operator Security Brefile		
Operator Security Profile		
1 Master Pro	ofile	
Language		
S Fuelish		
English		
< ↓ 1 of 12		\triangleright \triangleright I

If the system is setup and licensed for the *Active Directory* option then the AxiomVTM system can use the current domain user's authentication to login. For more information on *Active Directory* see Appendix B.

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Login ID

The operator when logging into the software uses his/her Login ID.

Password

This is the log in password for the operator. It is entered twice for confirmation.

Operator Security Profile

Click the *browse* button and select a profile from the list.

Language

Click the down arrow and select a language from the list. When the operator logs in this language is set up in the software.

Holidays

Use the *Holidays* window to define *Holiday* dates. AxiomVTM allows any day or days of the year to be designated a *Holiday* – Type 1 or Type 2. These days provide an automatic override of normal *Schedule* parameters for the seven days of the week, and invoke the appropriate *Holiday* scheduling instead.

🏂 Holidays 📃 🗌 🗙
📘 Save 📑 Edit 🏼 🗢 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Delete 🛛 📴 Copy 🛛 🏘 Find 🖉 View 🛛 🎽
Name Carry Forward
New Holiday
Network
Start date End date 21 Jun 2006 21 Jun 2006
Holiday Desgination Holiday Type • Holiday 1 • Variable Date • Holiday 2 • Fixed Date
I New Record

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Network

Holidays can be designated for all networks or for one specific network. In this way holidays can be different for different locations using the same database. To designate a holiday in multiple networks, but not all networks, will require multiple holiday records.

Start Date

Start Date is the date on which the holiday begins in MM-DD-YYYY¹³ format. For single day holidays (e.g., Labour Day), enter the date only. For holidays that span several days (e.g., Christmas break) this is the first day of the holiday (e.g., Dec 25/04).

¹³ Date is displayed in the format selected in the Windows – Control Panel – Regional Settings Properties-Date. If a two-digit year was chosen then it will be displayed in that form here.

End Date

End Date is the date on which the holiday ends in MM-DD-YYYY¹⁴ format⁻ For holidays that span several days (e.g., Christmas break), this is the last day of the holiday period. For example, if the Christmas break is from Dec 25/04 through Dec 28/04, enter 12/28/2004.

Holiday Designation

Radio buttons (*Holiday 1* or *Holiday 2*) to designate the holiday as one of two types. The holiday type depends on the *Schedule* settings that are specified for Holidays type 1 and type 2.

Holiday Types 1 and 2

AxiomV^{$^{\text{M}}$} provides two distinct Holiday types to increase system flexibility. Each Holiday type has its own schedule. Holiday Type 1 is normally used for Statutory Holidays, where all employees are off. Holiday Type 2 is commonly used in situations such as a summer shutdown, where the majority of employees take a fixed 2-week summer vacation but certain maintenance staff members continue to work during this period. When assigning access levels, maintenance workers can be given access during the 2-week vacation shut down and all other employees can be denied access.

All *Schedules* have a nine-day schedule, with the eighth day designated the Holiday 1 schedule and the ninth, the Holiday 2 schedule. Holidays replace the regular day of the week. The week with Labour Day in it will be; Sunday, Holiday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, and Saturday. There won't be a Monday in the week with Labour Day.

Туре

Radio buttons (*Fixed Date* or *Variable Date*) to designate whether the holiday occurs on the same calendar date each year (*Fixed Date*) or varies from year to year (*Variable Date*). E.g. Labour Day is a *Variable Date* while New Year's Day is a *Fixed Date*.

Carry Forward

Click on Carry Forward to copy Fixed Holidays that have past to the next year. For example it would create the Fixed Holiday 'New Year's Day - 1 Jan 2006' from the Fixed Holidays 'New Year's Day - 1 Jan 2005'.

¹⁴ Date is displayed in the format selected in the Windows – Control Panel – Regional Settings Properties-Date. If a two-digit year was chosen then it will be displayed in that form here.

Schedules

Schedules are a fundamental concept of access control, and they assume that the week is the basic recurring unit of time to be used in defining how the system will operate. A Schedule is essentially a two dimensional matrix with the days of the week along one axis and user-defined start time and end time settings along the other axis.

Once Schedules are defined they may be assigned, along with various operating instructions, to components of an access control system, thereby governing how the system behaves from week to week. Components that may be controlled using Schedules include Access Point operation, Input arming and disarming, Output switching, Cardholder Modes and Privileges, Printers, Modems, Event Log Messages, and more.

A *Period* is comprised of a start time, an end time and the days of the week to which the start and end time settings apply. A Schedule, such as Business Hours for a company, may contain one or more periods (maximum sixteen). In a schedule when the first start time occurs on any day, from any period in the schedule, the schedule will turn on. Any system features, functions, and operating modes associated with that schedule are enabled until the next occurrence of an end time from any period for this schedule, or in the case of individual functions, until manually turned off by operator command or a pending command.

It is important to note that a Period does not represent a continuous block of time. The start and end times are independent of one another, although $AxiomV^{TM}$ requires that the Start Time be a lower value than the End Time. It is useful to think of start and end times as on and off commands for the *Schedule*. It is possible to define a *Schedule* where multiple start times occur before any stop times. The only effect of consecutive start times is to re-enable any functions that have been disabled with a semi-permanent command.

For additional programming flexibility, AxiomVTM defines the week as having 2 additional days (*Holidays Type 1* and 2) which can be scheduled differently than the normal 7 days, thereby providing a means of accommodating irregular days such as holidays (see *Holidays setup* on page 194).

As An example you want to define "Business Hours" as 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Monday through Friday, plus 11:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Saturday and Sunday, excluding *Holidays*. The Business Hours *Schedule*, contains two periods, and appears as follows.

٢	Schedules											_ 🗆	×
	🎦 New 💷 Edit 🕫 Cancel 🗙 Delete 📴 Copy 👫 Eind 🗐 View												
	lame					_							
E	Business Hour:	S											
		Start	End	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	Н1	H 2	1
	Period 1:	0800	1700		1	1	1	1	1				
	Period 2:	1100	1700	⁄						⁄			
	Ports 1 0												
1	Period 15:												
	Period 16:												
<	👌 🎝 2 of 1	1										0	×I

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Start Time

Start Time (using a 24-hour clock hh:mm) defines the starting time of a period.

End Time

End Time (using a 24-hour clock hh:mm) defines the ending time for a period.

Weekday/Holiday check boxes

Use these check boxes to select days on which the *Period* applies. H1 and H2 refer to *Holiday* Type 1 and Type 2, as defined in the *Holidays* window.

Schedule Tips

Schedule Operation During Panel Reset

Whenever the NC100 panel is reset, (due to operator command, power loss etc.), the following decision process takes place.

First, the system checks to determine if the current date is a holiday and if it is, the start and end times for the respective holiday type are used for the reset test. Otherwise the day of the week determines which start and end times are considered in the reset test.

Second, the current reset time is compared against the start time and end time for each time zone under the day of the week selected in the first step above. Unless the following *Reset Condition* is satisfied, for at least one time zone in a *Schedule*, the underlying *Schedule* will be inactive (turned off) on reset. The *Schedule* will remain inactive, until the next start time occurs for that *Schedule*.

If, the following *Reset Condition* is satisfied, for at least one period in a *Schedule*, the underlying *Schedule* will be active (turned on) on reset. The *Schedule* will remain active, until the next end time occurs for that *Schedule*.



Reset Condition

Start Time < Current Reset Time < End Time

If TRUE, THEN restart with Time Group active.

If FALSE, THEN restart with Time Group inactive.

When designing *Periods* and *Schedules*, AxiomVTM insists that start times should always be less than end times for all Periods. Otherwise, the current reset time may not fall between the start time and end time, and the system would reset with the *Schedule* inactive.

However, "24:00" and "00:00" are both legitimate times for the Reset Condition testing in the previous section. Therefore, it may make sense to include 24:00 as an end time in a time zone in order to insure proper reset behavior.

Schedules That Span Midnight

When creating a schedule that needs to remain on through midnight, care should be taken. For example, suppose you want to define a *Schedule* as Late Shift from 6:00 p.m. to 4:00 a.m. Monday through Friday. Since the *End Time* must be greater than the *Start Time*, time groups that span midnight will require at least two *Periods*.

🍪 Sch	hedules												×I
12	Vew 🖳	<u>E</u> dit K⊃ Car	ncel 🛛 🗙 De	elete	₿_ (ору	🏘 Eir	nd [Viev	v			
Name						_							
Night	t Shift												
		Start	End	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	H 1	H 2	
Per	riod 1:	1800	2400		1	1	1	1	1				
Per	riod 2:	0000	0400			V	V	V	V	V			
Par	a i a												
Per	riod 15:												
Per	riod 16:												
	8 of 1	1										D DI	

The above *Schedule* restarts at midnight on Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, and Saturday even though it is already on from the previous day at 18:00. The midnight *schedule* activation on these five days is not problematic for AxiomVTM. Note, however, that the restart will turn on the schedule if any semi-permanent operator commands were issued to turn it off since 18:00 the previous day.

24 Hour "On" Schedules

Occasionally a *Schedule* that provides 24-hour access may be required. In the following example, the first time zone sets up a perpetual schedule that will never stop, not even on reset. The second time zone causes the *Schedule* to turn off at 00:01 a.m. on Saturday. The *Schedule* is turned on again at 00:00:01 a.m. on Monday.

٢	Schedules												×
3	🎦 New 📑 Edit 🕫 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Delete 🖻 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🛛 🏢 View												
	lame					_							
4	All Day Monda	y-Friday											
		Start	End	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	Н1	H 2	
	Period 1:	0000	2400		1	Í	Í	1	1				
	Period 2:	0000	0001							V			
	Ports L D												
	Period 15:												
	Period 16:												
k	🛛 🎝 <mark>6 of 1</mark>	1										\triangleright \triangleright	I

Duplicate Start Time or End Time Entries

Duplicated start time or end time entries within the same *Schedule* may yield unexpected results and should be avoided. The following is an example of a <u>poorly designed</u> *Schedule*.

٢	Schedules											×
	🖹 New 🎐	<u>E</u> dit K⊃ Car	ncel 🛛 🗙 De	elete	₿ _ C	ору	🊧 Eir	nd [Viev	٧		
	lame					_						
	Warehouse St	aff										
		Start	End	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	Н1	H 2
	Period 1:	0800	1700		1	Í	⁄	1	1			
	Period 2:	1200	1700						1	1		
	Porte L O											
	Period 15:											
	Period 16:											
K		1										\triangleright \triangleright I

Areas

Areas need to be setup to control and monitor cardholder movement. They are primarily used in conjunction with Antipassback.

🛃 Areas	_ 🗆 🗙
🛛 🎦 New 🖳 Edit 🖙 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Delete 🛛 📴 Copy 🛛 🚧 Eind 🖷	View
Name	
Inside	
Reset cardholder area Schedule	
0	
Input	
0	
Output	
6 Spare Output #2	
Antipassback Area	
< < 1 of 3	\triangleright \forall

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Reset Cardholder Area Schedule

Click on the browse button and select a schedule for when the reset is active. A Monday to Friday schedule would mean that the reset wouldn't happen on Saturday or Sunday. Enter the actual time in the box below the schedule. This is the time the reset will be executed.

Input

Click on the browse button and select an input. When that input goes into an Input Alarm state it will immediately generate an area report for the area listing all the cardholders that are currently in the area.

Output

Click on the browse button and select an output. When the area becomes empty (cardholder count drops to zero) the output will turn on (semi-permanently).

Antipassback Area

This is a check box to select if this area is an Antipassback Area. See Antipassback on page 19 for more details on antipassback.

Messages

Use the *Messages* window to define text to be associated with alarm messages. The message text provides instructions to operators monitoring security access with AxiomVTM. These instructions can provide information on how to respond to a specific alarm, standardized operator actions taken in response to an alarm. In this screen you can add, delete, change, or view these messages.

and the stages and the stages are staged as the stage state of the stage state of the state of t				
🛛 🖬 Save 🗐 Ed	it 🔊 Cancel	\times Delete	Ba Copy	🏟 Eind 🛛 🎫 View
Name				
New Message				
				 Instructions Action Messages TIMESTAMP EVENTID EVENTIDESC NETWORKID NETWORKDES NC100ID NC100DESC DEVICEID Insert
🛛 🔄 New Reco	ord			\triangleright \triangleright

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Message Type

- **Instructions** Instruction message types are standard phrases that outline how an operator should respond to a particular alarm event. These instruction messages may be attached to specific alarm events and will pop-up to prompt the operator to behave in a predetermined way. Instruction messages are used to ensure standardized response to alarm events no matter which operator handles the alarm.
 - These messages can also be selected to be sent to SafeSuiteTM keypads under the keypad command *Send Message*.

🜐 Send r	nessage [? 💌
Line 1	Select Message	
Line 2		
	Send Cancel	

- Action Action message types are standard descriptions of the actions an operator might take frequently in responding to alarms. These messages are available for the operator to use when documenting how they handled a specific alarm event in the Alarm Details screen.
- Messages 'Message' messages constitute an electronic instruction that may be defined and saved for transmission via a RS232 serial port on the Host PC, to any peripheral device that supports the ASCII standard. These messages may be assigned to access control events in the Advanced Programming screens for C-Net Networks, Access Points, and Inputs. The message will then be sent automatically upon the occurrence of the underlying event within the specified schedule.

There are a number of variables that may be inserted into your messages so that you can possibly use one message multiple times. Messages that you want to have the name of the point that caused the event or the time the event happened are examples of how these inserts can be used.

Inserts

TIMESTAMP	Date & Time of the event, acquired from the event message.
EVENTID	Identification number associated with the event.
EVENTDES	Description of the event, acquired from the event message.
NETWORKID	Identification number associated with the network of the event.
NETWORKDES	Description of the network, associated with the event message.
NC100ID	Identification number associated with the NC100 of the event.
NC100DES	Description of the NC100, associated with the event message.
DEVICESID	Identification number associated with the device (RC2, IOC16, or SafeSuite [™] panel) of the event.
DEVICEDES	The description of the device (RC2, IOC16, or SafeSuite TM panel) associated with the event message.
CARDID	
CARDNUMBER	Card number associated with the event.
CARDHOLDER	Name of the cardholder associated with the event.

Any fields that have been added under Custom Fields will also be on this list.

Hardware Setup



The Hardware Setup screen is where new hardware items are added to the system.

Networks

Right click on *NC100 Networks* to add a new network to the system. This will bring up the network properties window to set the properties of the new network. Under the newly created Network will be an icon to add NC100s. Up to fifteen NC100s can be connected on one network.

Right click on a Network to either delete that Network or to go into the Network's properties screen.

Network Properties

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Comms Server

Select which Comms Server this network is connected to.

General

Network Properties	×
Name Comms Server	
Direct Network TESTING_6	<u> </u>
General Advanced	
Port Type Inactive Alternate master panel address	
PC Comm Parameters	
Poll Rate Network Timeout Poll Rate Network Timeout 100 Milli Sec	
C-Net Parameters	
Slave Check-in time. Channel Monitor time 5 Sec 10 Sec	
Ok	Cancel

RBH Access Technologies Inc.

Port Type

AxiomVTM supports the following applications for communication ports:

Inactive

Inactive is the default setting for ports not in use. This setting is also selected to disable the port.

Direct Network

Direct Network supports a controller network (*C-NET*) connected directly to the host PC via serial connections.

TCP/IP Network

TCP/IP Network supports TCP/IP controller network (*C-NET*) through a LAN connection.

Alternate master panel address¹⁵

Use the spin buttons to select the address of the alternative or backup master NC-100. If the Axiom server loses communications with the primary master NC-100 panel (address #1) it will switch to the alternate master panel to resume communications with the network. This feature requires NC100 firmware version 7.40+.

Port Properties

Direct Network Properties

Port Type Direct	Alternate master panel address
Primary	Alternate
Comm Port	Comm Port
COM1	COM2
Baud	Baud
38400	38400

Select the Comm port and Baud rate for the direct connection of this network.

¹⁵ This selection is only available if the optional license for the Alternate Master NC100 Software has been purchased and installed.

TCP Network Properties

Port Type TCP/IP	Alternate master panel address
Primary IP Address	Alternate IP Address
192.168.168.001	192.168.168.002
Port 3002	Port 3002
	,

Enter the IP address of the TCP-NC100 as well as its port number.

PC Comm Parameters

PC Polling parameters specify the times used by the PC in polling the Master controller on the C-NET. Normally, the default settings do not need to be changed.

Poll Rate

Poll Rate establishes the interval between PC initiated polling attempts. Under a modem connection situation, this polling frequency comes into effect as soon as the modem connection has been established with the remote site.

Network Timeout

Network Timeout establishes the duration of time that must expire before the PC will declare a '*Communications Offline*' condition. AxiomVTM comes with a default timeout of 1000-milliseconds

C-Net Parameters

The C-Net parameters are for communications between the master NC100 controller and slave NC100 controllers on the C-Net. The master NC100 does not poll the slaves. Rather, each slave NC100 on the C-Net sends test signals to the master NC100 approximately every 10 milliseconds, alternating between communications channel A, and communications channel B.

Slave Check In Time

Slave Check In Time establishes the maximum amount of time, in seconds that can elapse between communications of any kind with the slave NC100 on either channel A or channel B. Beyond this value, the master NC100 will declare the slave *Offline* and generate an alarm.

Channel Monitor time

Establishes the maximum amount of time that can elapse between successful tests either of the communication channels A and B. Beyond this value, a *Channel Fault Condition* will be declared and reported for the channel whose monitor time expired.

Advanced

The Advanced tab has additional parameters for the network.

Network Properties	×
Name Direct Network	Comms Server TESTING_6
General Advanced	1
Day Light Savings Time Date to Move 1 Hour Ahead IZ Apr 2007	Time Zone difference 00:00 HH:MM © Backward © Forward
Date to Move 1 Hour Behind 29 Oct 2007 Battery Test Interval 24:00 HH:MM	Card Size C 16 Bit - Max 65535 C 24 Bit - Max 16777215 32 Bit - Max 4294967295 C 64 Bit
	Ok Cancel

Day Light Savings Time

Check the boxes to enable the NC100 to change the time of day because of Day Light Savings Time. Enter the dates to change on by selecting them from the pull down calendar or by typing it in. These dates are not automatically set for the next year so they need to be entered every year. The actual change is done by the NC100 (not the PC) so the dates need to be downloaded to the NC100 before the change date.

Battery Test Interval

The Battery Test Interval is set in hours and minutes only.

The battery test is an *interval* and <u>not</u> a time of day. The time of day that the battery is tested cannot be set manually.

Time Zone Difference

The *Time Zone Difference* is set in hours and minutes. It is used when a network is located in a different Time Zone than the server. Downloads to set the time on the network will be adjusted by this setting.

Card Size

The card size will limit the cardholder database by not allowing card numbers over a preset value. Allowing larger card numbers will use more of the NC100's memory.

NC100s

Right click on *NC100s* to add a new NC100 panel to the system. This will bring up the panel properties window to set the properties of the new NC100. Under the newly created NC100 will be two icons one to add RC2s and the other to add IOC16s. Up to four RC2s and sixteen IOC16s can be connected on each NC100.

Right click on an NC100 to either delete the NC100 or to go into the NC100's properties screen.

NC100 Properties

Properties for the NC100 are set in this window. The address is set when the NC100 is created in the system and cannot be edited later.

Panel Properties	? ×
Address Name	
General	
D-Net Protocol	
● CRC16 5 -	
C Checksum	
C Checksum/Address	
OK	Cancel

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

General

D-Net Protocol

Select one of three protocols for the D-Net.

- *CRC16* is a newer more up to date protocol that is now programmed into all devices.
- *Checksum* is the original protocol for the D-Net and is still included in the system for backward compatibility to original devices that are still working out in the field.
- *Checksum/Address* was created for a special application and adds sixteen to the address of all devices in the network.

D-Net Retries

D-Net Retries specify the number of times that the NC100 will try to communicate with the D-Net (Device Network) controllers, i.e. RC2s and IOC16s before declaring and reporting an Offline condition. The default is five.
Right click on *RC2s* to add a new RC2 to the system. This will bring up the RC2 properties window to set the properties of the new RC2. Adding an RC2 will also add two access points, eight inputs, and eight outputs. The eight outputs and four of the inputs will be defaulted for the access points but can be changed to general purpose if needed.

Right click on an RC2 to either delete the RC2 or to go into the RC2's properties screen.

RC2 Properties

Properties for the RC2 are set in this window. The address is set when the RC2 is created in the system and cannot be edited later.

RC2 Properties		X
Address	Name RC2 2-2-1	
General		
	OK	Cancel

Address

RC-2s can only be addressed 1-4; no other addresses are valid for RC-2s

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

IOC16s

Right click on IOC16s to add a new IOC16 to the system. This will bring up the IOC16 properties window to set the properties of the new IOC16.

Right click on an IOC16 to either delete the IOC16 or to go into the IOC16's properties screen.

IOC16 Properties

Properties for the IOC16 are set in this window. The address is set when the IOC16 is created in the system and cannot be edited later.

IOC16 Prop	erties					×
		me C16 2-1-1-5				
General						
	Input	Output		Input	Output	
1.	۲	0	9.	0	۲	
2.	۲	0	10.	0	۲	
3.	۲	0	11.	0	۲	
4.	۲	0	12.	0	۲	
5.	۲	0	13.	0	۲	
6.	۲	0	14.	0	۲	
7.	۲	0	15.	0	۲	
8.	۲	0	16.	0	۲	
				OK	Car	ncel

Address

IOC-16s can only be addressed 5-20; no other addresses are valid for IOC-16s

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

General

For each of the sixteen ports of the IOC-16 choose whether that port is to be an input or an output.

Keypads

Right click on Keypads to either add one new Keypad to the system or a group of consecutively addressed Keypads. Adding one will bring up the Keypad properties window to set the properties of the new Keypad. Selecting *Add Multiple Keypads* will bring up a window to set the start and end addresses of the keypads being added.

븆 Add Multiple Keypads		<u>?</u> ×
Start Address		
21	Start	
End Address		
127	Cancel	

Click *Start* to add the keypads.

Right click on a Keypad to either delete the Keypad or to go into the Keypad's properties screen.

Chapter 7 Database

Keypad Properties

Properties for the Keypad are set in this window. The address is set when the Keypad is created in the system and cannot be edited later.

😰 Apartments	×
Address Description	
General Inputs Outputs Links Apartment Name New Apartment	_
Tenant Name	
Contact Name Emergency Phone Home Phone	
Business Phone Mobile Phone	
Parking 1 Parking 2	
Comments	
	V
OK	Cancel

Address

Keypads can be addressed from 1-255. Be aware of RC-2 and IOC-16 addressing, it is possible to duplicate addresses and cause communication problems. It is advisable to start addressing Keypad at 21 so that future expansion can add RC-2s and IOC-16s.

Keypads added singly are addressed from the properties screen while keypads added as a group are addressed as they are added.

Description

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

General

Apartment Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Tenant Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Contact Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Emergency Phone

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Home Phone

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Business Phone

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Mobile Phone

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Parking 1

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Parking 2

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Comments

Up to 255 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Inputs

Apartme	ents			<u>.</u>
æ	Address Description			
	1 New Keypa	d		
ieneral []	nputs Outputs Links			
ID	Description	Zone Type	Circuit Type	Application
	1 Zone 1	Entry/Exit	NC, No Resistor	Steady Siren
	2 Zone 2	General Purpose	NC, No Resistor	Steady Siren
	3 Zone 3	General Purpose	NC, No Resistor	Steady Siren
	4 Zone 4	General Purpose	NC, No Resistor	Steady Siren
	5 Zone 5	General Purpose	NC, No Resistor	Steady Siren
	6 Zone 6	General Purpose	NC, No Resistor	Steady Siren
	7 Zone 7	General Purpose	NC, No Resistor	Steady Siren
	8 Zone 8	General Purpose	NC, No Resistor	Steady Siren
			OK	Cancel

Description

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Zone Type

General Purpose:	Never armed.
Entry/Exit:	Provides Entry Delay time to disarm before the keypad goes into alarm, and Exit Delay time to leave the protected area before the keypad fully arms.
Follower:	Follows the delay time of the Entry/Exit zone but only if the Entry/Exit zone is tripped first.
Interior:	Not armed in Instant mode or Home mode.

Exterior:	Instant acting zone that is armed and disarmed with the Keypad.
24 Hour Delayed:	Always armed zone that provides a time period to clear the zone before initiating an alarm.
24 Hour:	Always armed zone.
Arm/Disarm Switch:	Tripping this zone arms or disarms the keypad.

Circuit Type

NC, No Resistor

NO, No Resistor

NC, One Resistor

NO, One Resistor

NC, Two Resistors

NO, Two Resistors

NC & NO, One Resistor

See the Hardware Manual for more information on Circuit Types.

Application

Buzzer:	Sound only the Keypad buzzer on alarm.
Pulse Siren:	Pulse the siren output on and off during an alarm.
Pulse Siren /Buzzer:	Pulse the siren output and the Keypad buzzer on an alarm.
Silent:	No output on an alarm.
Steady Siren:	Turn on the siren output during an alarm.
Steady Siren/Buzzer:	Turn on the siren output and the Keypad buzzer during an alarm.

Outputs

🎒 Apartmen	ts			×
General Inp	Address Description 1 New Keypad outs Outputs Links]
ID	Description	Туре		
	1 Output 1	General Purpose		
	2 Output 2	General Purpose		
	3 Output 3	General Purpose		
	4 Output 4	General Purpose		
	5 Output 5	General Purpose		
	6 Output 6	General Purpose		
	7 Output 7	General Purpose		
	8 Output 8	General Purpose		
			ОК	Cancel

Description

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Туре

General Purpose:	Has no predetermined function.	
Siren:	Turns on to power an audible device for Alarms.	
Status LED:	Turn on to indicate that the Keypad is armed.	
OK to Arm LED:	Turn on to indicate that all zones are normal and the Keypad may be armed.	
Buzzer:	Turns on to drive an audible that follows the Keypad's buzzer.	
Lock:	This output is used to activate a door lock.	
<i>LED1</i> : & <i>LED2</i> :	These outputs are used to drive the red and green LEDs of a card reader connected to the Keypad.	

Links

Address Description		
🕌 1 🕂 New Keypad		
eneral Inputs Outputs Links		
		_
Event	Link	Þ
Zone 1 Alarm		
Zone 2 Alarm		
Zone 3 Alarm		
Zone 4 Alarm		
Zone 5 Alarm		
Zone 6 Alarm		
Zone 7 Alarm		
Zone 8 Alarm		
Zone Trouble All		
Zone Restore All		
Keypad Panic		
Keypad Emergency		
Keypad Fire		
Disarm		
Home		•

From here you can select a link and have it executed on an event appropriate to the Keypad. For example you could turn on an output when a specific zone went into alarm.

To select a link click on the box under *Link* that is beside the event you want the link to be execute by. Then click the *browse* button and search for the desired link.

Access Points

Two access points are created automatically when an RC2 is created.

Access Point Properties

Set the Access Point's properties from this window.

Access Point Properties Name RC2 2-1-1\Reader 1 General Reader Options Links Code Reader Links		×
Type Access Auto-relock First person delay Report door not open Report unknown format Required PC Decision Disable forced entry RTE Bypass DC Unlock schedule O Disable RTE O DHO Warning Schedule O Image: Comparison of the second s	Retries 5 Unlock time 10 Sec Extended unlock time 30 Sec DH0 warning 6 Sec DH0 alarm 7 Sec Alarm Lockout Time 2 Sec Asset Present Time 0 Sec C	
	OK	Cancel

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

General

Type

The types of access point are:

Access – normal operation, system controls access to door via a reader.
Elevator – allows user to select a floor button after valid card presentation.
Patient Door – patient monitoring system card reader.
Patient Elevator – patient reader installed in elevator cab.
Time and Attendance – for future use.
Sentex – for Telephone Entry integration.
Asset Door – for Asset tracking.
Asset Reporting – for Asset monitoring.

Auto Relock

Check this box to enable the *Auto Relock* feature. When enabled, the door will lock, (or return to normal lock position), following a valid access code entry or access request, as soon as the door contact closes. When disabled, the lock output remains unlocked for the duration of the *Unlock Time* that is assigned. (See Unlock Time below.)

First Person Delay

When this box is checked, the *First Person Delay* feature is activated. For systems where the door is automatically unlocked by time group, this feature overrides the unlock schedule until a valid card is presented at the reader. After the first valid person enters the door, the lock reverts to the time group schedule.

As an example, consider a store that opens from 9am to 6pm and where the entrance door is controlled by an unlock schedule. If for any reason store employees are late arriving, we do not want the schedule to open the store. By enabling *First Person Delay*, the store will remain locked until the first person arrives regardless of how late he/she may be.

Report Door Not Open

Check this box to activate the *Report Door Not Open* alarm feature. With this feature enabled, a Door Not Open alarm will be generated and reported on the monitor screen, each time a valid card is presented at the reader, but no one actually enters through the access point. This feature is useful in time and attendance applications.

If this feature is disabled, the Door Not Open event will still be logged in the history file, but will not display on the Monitor screen. If so selected under *Advanced Programming* for access points, a Door Not Open alarm will display on the Alarm screen.

Report Unknown Format

Check this box to activate the *Report Unknown Format* feature. If a card with an unknown format is then presented at this reader, the system will generate an Unknown Format Alarm and display it on the Monitor screen.

If this feature is disabled, the Unknown Format event will still be logged in the history file, but will not display on the screen. If so selected under *Advanced Programming* for access points, an Access Denied alarm will display on the Alarm screen each time a card with an unknown format is presented to this reader.

Required PC Decision

When this box is checked the decision to grant access is not made by the NC100. The NC100 will do its regular verification of the card but will not grant access. Instead it will simply notify the PC if access is to be granted a command must come from the PC.



For "Required PC Decision" feature to work, NC100 controllers must have firmware 5.09 or higher.

Disabled Forced Entry

Check this box, to disable normal *Forced Entry* alarm operation. When *Forced Entry* is disabled, opening the door simulates the operation of the request to exit input.

RTE Bypass DC

Check this box to enable the *Request-to-Exit Bypass Door Contact Only* feature. When enabled, a request to exit input at the access point, bypasses the door contact only, and does not unlock the door. This operation is typically selected where a motion detector is connected to the request to exit input and the door uses a door strike that can be manually opened from the inside.

Unlock Schedule

Use the *Browse* button to select the *Schedule* during which this access point is to remain unlocked.

Disable Request to Exit

Use the *Browse* button to select the *Schedule* during which the RTE function is disabled at this access point. In other words, the system does not respond to requests to exit.

Disable DHO Warning

Use the *Browse* button to select the *Schedule* during which *Door Held Open (DHO)* warning is disabled for this access point.

Retries

Retries specifies the maximum number of consecutive invalid card/PIN reads permitted (1-16), before a lockout alarm is created and the system rejects further access attempts to grant access.

Unlock Time

Unlock Time sets the amount of time a door will remain unlocked after a valid RTE or card presentation. The system default is 10 seconds. The *Unlock Time* applies to the door and is valid for all cardholders in the system.

When *Auto Relock* is enabled on the access point window, the access point will lock when the door is shut, or when the unlock time expires, whichever happens first.

Extended Unlock Time

The *Extended Unlock Time* feature may be used to allow particular cardholders, who require more than the standard *Unlock Time*, to pass through an access point. Use *Extended Unlock Time* to set the amount of time, (usually more than the Unlock Time), that a door remains unlocked after presentation by a cardholder that has been given '*Extended Unlock*' privilege.



When *Auto Relock* is enabled on the access point window, the access point will lock when the door is shut, or when the unlock time expires, whichever happens first.

DHO Alarm

This setting is used to set the maximum amount of time a door can be held open beyond the expiry of the *Unlock Time* without generating an alarm. On expiry of the *DHO* time, the system creates an alarm and emits a continuous warning sound until the door is closed.

DHO Warning

This setting is used to set the maximum amount of time a door can be held open beyond the expiry of the *Unlock Time* without generating a warning. On expiry of the *DHO Warning* time, the system reports to the PC and the card reader emits a periodic warning sound until the door is closed.



DHO Alarm overrides the DHO Warning. Generally the alarm time is longer than the warning time so that a warning will be activated before the alarm. If the alarm time is shorter than the warning time there won't be a warning only an alarm.

Alarm Lockout Time

This setting is used to set the minimum duration that a keypad locks out any further access attempts, when the *Number Retries* is exceeded.

Asset Present Time

Asset Present Time is the amount of time that the Access Point will be in Asset Mode waiting for the Asset's owner to present their card.

☑ Enabled

Unchecking the *Enabled* box will make the access point unavailable to the status list. Since it is not on the status list commands cannot be sent to it. It will not be removed from the database or prevented from sending messages.

Reader Options

Access Point Properties	×
Name	
RC2 2-1-1\Reader 1	
General Reader Options Links Code Re	ader Links]
Card Formats 39 bit Kantech XSF 39 bit RBH 40 bit GE 40 bit PCSC	High Security 0 Two Person 0
▼ 50 bit RBH	Code Tracing
Deduct usage	0
Facility code fallback mode	Exiting Area
In/Out Reader	Entering Area
Offline Operation Enabled	1 Entering
Require Card and PIN	APB Enabled
	OK Cancel

Reader Formats

This window lists all available card reader bit formats. Readers may be configured to support up to five different formats simultaneously. Click to select (check) or unselect (uncheck) a format on the list.

Deduct Usage

If this box is checked, a usage is deducted each time access is granted to a card that has been configured with a limited number of uses. (For more information on *Usage Count* check page 262 in Chapter 7).

Facility Code Fall Back

When an access card is presented under normal conditions the NC100 gets the card number and facility code from the RC2 and decides whether or not to grant access. If communication is lost between the NC100 and the RC2, the RC2 still can grant access based on correct facility code, if the *Facility Code Fallback* feature is enabled. Check this box to enable the *Facility Code Fallback* feature for this access point.

Reverse Data

Check this box to enable the *Reverse Data* feature. When enabled, the RC2 will reverse the data string read from the card. This is generally used in insertion readers so that the proper data is read when the card is removed from the reader, and not when the card is inserted.

In/Out Reader

In/Out Reader mode is used when a single RC2 has both its readers controlling the same door, one for entry, and one for exit (two readers, one door lock, and one door contact). The door lock, the door contact, and the entry reader are connected to the A-side of the RC2. The exit reader is connected to the B-side of the RC2. In this configuration, the B-side of the RC2 acts as a slave to the A-side. Both readers can be configured separately with different parameters. Yet when activated the B-side reader will use the A-side inputs and outputs.



This box must be checked for both the side A and side B readers.

Offline Operation Enabled

Checking this box means that the NC-100 will download card data to the reader control. This will allow the controller to function after losing communications with the NC-100.

Hardware Requirements

NC-100 firmware must be 8.27. An NRC must be used with firmware version 9.1. For more detailed information check Technical Bulletin 'TB58 RC Stand Alone Mode".

Require Card and PIN

Checking the *Require Card and PIN* box will cause this access point to only grant access if the correct PIN is entered after a card is read. This is used to increase the level of security at an access point, since only presenting a card will not be given an access granted.

High Security

Use the *Browse* button to select the *Schedule* during which *High Security* mode is automatically enabled. In *High Security* mode, only cards with high security privileges, may gain access to this access point.

Two Person

Use the *Browse* button to select the *Schedule* during which two valid cards must be presented in order for access to be granted. Note that the second card must be presented within ten seconds of the first.

Code Tracing

Use the *Browse* button to select the *Schedule* during which this reader traces cards that have been defined with the *Trace This Card* option enabled in the *Cardholder Configuration* screen.

Exiting Area

Exiting Area is used to set the area from which the access point leaves. This area must be specified in order to use the *Area Antipassback* feature.

Entering Area

Entering Area is used to set the area into which the access point goes into. This area must be specified in order for *Antipassback*, *Mustering*, and *Card Tracing* features to operate.

APB Enabled

Check this box to enable Antipassback.

APB Enabled
Timed anti-passback
0 ÷ Sec 💌
Hard Operation Schedule
🗖 Log if Door Open

Timed Antipassback

Use this setting to set the minimum amount of time that must expire, before a card that was presented to this reader previously, may be used again at this same reader.

To use antipassback but not *Timed Antipassback* ensure that the time in *Timed Antipassback* is set to zero. Once a time is set in *Timed Antipassback* then *Timed Antipassback* will be in effect instead of any other form of antipassback.

Hard Operation Schedule

Use the *Browse* button to select the *Schedule*, during which, access will be denied when either a *Reader Antipassback* or an *Area Antipassback* violation occurs. When the violation occurs outside of this *Schedule*, access is permitted and reported as an "Access Granted Antipassback Reader".

Log if Door Open

Place a checkmark in this box to activate the *Log If Door Open* feature. When active, the cardholder must present their card <u>and</u> actually open the door before they are logged (in the Cardholder database) into the area being entered. If this box is not checked then a successful grant access will log the cardholder into the *Entering Area* even if they don't open the door.

Links

• ,	1-1\Reader 1 otions Links Code Reader Links Link Description net2-h Image: Image	
eral Reader Option essage roed Entry mper or Held Open cess Granted	btions Links Code Reader Links	
essage rced Entry mper or Held Open cess Granted	Link Description	
rced Entry mper or Held Open cess Granted		
mper or Held Open cess Granted	net2-h	
or Held Open cess Granted	net2-h	
cess Granted		
cess Denied		
cure		
tient		
de Tracing		
or Not Open		

To establish a link click in the *Link Description* box beside the *Message* you want the link activated on. Then click the *Browse* button and select the desired link from the list presented. The name of the chosen link will be shown in the *Link Description* box to confirm the link programming.

Acce	ss Poinl	t Prop	perties			×
E.	3	Nam	e			
	И	RC2	2-1-1\Reader 1	_		
	ч- ,					
Ger	neral R	eader	Options Links Code Reader Links			
	Code		Link Description	Cardnumber		
		1234	AxiomLink #2	 4294967295		
					_	
	<u> </u>					
	<u> </u>				F	
					_	
					1	Connect
				OK		Cancel

Code Reader Links

Code Reader Links will execute the designated link after a specific code is entered. The code is punched into a keypad after the noted *Cardnumber* has been Granted Access. If the *Cardnumber* is left blank then after any Grant Access the code will execute the assigned link.

Inputs

Inputs are created with the creation RC2s and IOC16s. They can be either defaulted to an access point (RC2s only) or general purpose.

Input Properties

Set the Input's properties from this window. A General Purpose input will be shown here. Default inputs, being tied to an access point, don't have all the features of a General Purpose input to program.

Input Properties	×
Name	
RC2 2-1-1\Reader 1 RTE	
General Links	
✓ Input Type Defaulted	
RTE	
Circuit Type	
NO, No Resistor	
Enabled	
OK Can	

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

General

☑ Input Type Defaulted

Inputs 1 and 2 on an RC2 can be set as either general-purpose inputs or they can be defaulted. When defaulted, input 1 will be used as a Request-to-Exit input for the access point. Input 2 when defaulted will be used as a Door Contact input for that same access point. Side A and side B of the RC2 both have their own input 1 and input 2 to be defaulted or used as general-purpose inputs. Defaulted inputs are part of an access point and should not be considered as separate entities.

Input Properties	×
Name	
IOC16 2-1-1-5\Input 1	
General Links	
	Abort Delay
General Purpose	0 🕂 Sec 💌
Circuit Type	
NO, No Resistor	Forced Arm Alarm
Disarm Schedule	
0	
Enabled	
	OK Cancel

Circuit Type

Use the list box to select the type of circuit that the Input is connected to. The system supports seven different circuit types ranging from unsupervised loops to partially supervised (*single resistor*) and fully supervised (*two resistor*) loops. *Refer to the Hardware Installation Manual for full details of the circuit types*.

The selection must match the physical circuit connection. The system uses 1K (1000 ohm) end-of-line resistors.

Disarm Schedule

Use the *Browse* button to select the *Schedule* during which the alarm/input is automatically disarmed by the system schedule.

Abort Delay

This field specifies the maximum duration (from 1 second to 127 minutes) that an *Input* can remain in the Alarm State without reporting the alarm event to the computer. If the *Input* changes state and returns to normal within the abort delay time period, no alarm is sent to the computer. Each *Input* may be programmed with a unique abort delay time.

Temperature monitoring is one application where abort delay is used effectively. Suppose we want to generate a freezer alarm if the freezer temperature rises above a preset threshold for more than five minutes. We are not concerned if the temperature rises for a few seconds and then returns to normal. Try using a general-purpose Input and setting the abort delay to five minutes to accomplish this.

Forced Arm Alarm

Use the list box to specify whether this input generates a *Forced Arm Alarm*. A *Forced Arm* occurs when an *Input* device is armed while it is in an abnormal state. Once armed, by definition, the abnormal state becomes an Alarm state. The system administrator has two options in specifying how $AxiomV^{TM}$ should handle this Forced Arm situation.

<u>Yes</u>

Select *Yes* in this field, and the system will generate an Alarm immediately upon arming, and execute all attendant commands and messages.

<u>No</u>

Select *No* in this field and the system will delay generating an Alarm until the system Restores and goes into Alarm a subsequent time.

✓ Enabled

Unchecking the *Enabled* box will make the input unavailable to the status list. Since it is not on the status list commands cannot be sent to it. It will not be removed from the database or prevented from sending messages.

Links

Inp	out Propert	ies		×
		Name		
	* +	10016 2-1-1-	-5\Input 1	
G	ieneral Lin	ks]		_
	Message		Link Description	1
	Alarm			
	Abnormal			
	Restore			
	Normal			
	Trouble			
	Illegal			
			OK Cancel	

To establish a link click in the *Link Description* box beside the *Message* you want the link activated on. Then click the *Browse* button and select the desired link from the list presented. The name of the chosen link will be shown in the *Link Description* box to confirm the link programming.

Outputs

Outputs are created with the creation RC2s and IOC16s. They can be either defaulted to an access point (RC2s only) or general purpose.

Output Properties

Set the Output's properties from this window. A General Purpose output will be shown here. Default outputs, being tied to an access point, don't have all the features of a General Purpose output to program.

Output Properties	×
Name RC2 2-1-1\Reader 1 Door Held Open	
General Links	
 ✓ OutputType Defaulted ✓ DHO Alarm ✓ Counter Value ○ ● Energized ✓ Enabled 	
OK	Cancel

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

General

☑ Output Type Defaulted

RC-2 outputs can be set as either general-purpose outputs or they can be defaulted. When defaulted, output 1 will be used as a Lock output for the access point. Output 2 when defaulted will be used as a Forced/Tamper output for that same access point. Output 3 when defaulted will be used for Door Held Open warning and alarm. Output 4 when defaulted will be used for Alarm Shunt. Side A and side B both have their own outputs to be defaulted or used as general-purpose outputs. Defaulted outputs are part of an access point and should not be considered as separate entities.

Output Properties		×
Name IDC16 2-1-1-5\Dutput 7		
General Links		
General Purpose		
· _	Counter Value	
On State Energized		
ON Schedule		
Enabled		
	OK	Cancel

On State

Use the list box to specify the *Output*'s normal *On State* as either *Energized* or *De*energized. When the output is turned on is it powered or is power removed?

On schedule

Use the Browse button to select the Schedule during which the output is turned 'On'.

Counter Value

Enter a value greater than zero to activate *Counter* mode operation. *Counter* mode is used in applications where the output is only turned on after a certain number of commands telling it to turn on. Any *General Purpose* output in the system may be configured for *Counter* mode. The *Counter* value can be set from 1 to 32,767, in this box. This value is a threshold setting. When the count for an output is equal to or above this value the output turns on. When the count is below this value the output is turned off. The counter maintains a running count of on/off operations. Each time a counter output is instructed to turn on, the count is increased by one. Each off command decreases the count by one. The count will not go negative or increase above 32765. When an *Output* is set to operate in *Counter* mode, the respective links will only execute when the output turns on or off and not when the output's count is changed.

A 'Lot Full' sign in a parking lot is one application where the threshold counter feature may be used. If the lot capacity is one hundred, the sign should turn on if the number of cars reaches one hundred and turn off as soon as the number goes below one hundred. In this example, the on link is executed when the count reaches one hundred and the counter output is turned on. Subsequent ON commands will increment the count but will not alter the state of the output or execute the on link. An OFF command will turn off the output and execute the off link only when the count value is one hundred. Subsequent OFF commands will reduce the count but won't alter the Output State or execute the off link.

Links

Out	tput Prope	rties				×
	<u>.</u>	Name 10C16 2-1-1	-5\Output 7			
G	ieneral Lin	ks				
	Message		Link Description			
	On					
	Off					
_					OK	Cancel

To establish a link click in the *Link Description* box beside the *Message* you want the link activated on. Then click the *Browse* button and select the desired link from the list presented. The name of the chosen link will be shown in the *Link Description* box to confirm the link programming.

Non Reader Access Points

Non-reader access points do not use reader ports and are <u>created by the user</u> from selected General Purpose inputs and outputs.



Right click on Non Reader Access Points to add a new Non Reader Access Point to the system. This will bring up the Non Reader Access Point properties window to set the properties of the new Non Reader Access Point.

🗙 <u>D</u> elete	
Properties	

Right click on a Non Reader Access Point to either delete the Non Reader Access Point or to go into the Non Reader Access Point's properties screen.



Only General Purpose inputs and outputs on IOC16s attached to the NC100 can be used to create Non Reader Access Points for that NC100.

Non Reader Access Point Properties

Non Reader Access Points do not have all the features of regular Access Points (without a reader, some features are irrelevant). The features they do have work the same way they would for a regular Access Point. They can even be added to Access Point Groups.

General

Access Point Properties		×
Access Point General IO Configuration Links		
Type Access	Unlock time	
Unlock schedule	DHO warning 20 ÷ Sec ▼ DHO alarm 30 ÷ Sec ▼	
0 Disable RTE 0 DHO Warning Schedule 0		
Enabled	ОК	Cancel

IO Configuration

Access Poin	It Properties	×
	Name	
	Access Point	
~~ 		
General []	0 Configuration Links	
	Door Contact	
	0	
	RTE	
	0	
	Lock	
	0	
	Forced Entry	
	0	
	DHO Warning	
	0	
	DHO Alarm	
	0	
	OK Cano	

Click the Browse button for each point: Door Contact, RTE, Lock, Forced Entry, DHO Warning, and DHO Alarm. A list of available points to select from will pop up. Make a selection for each point and click OK. Points that are not required may be left blank.

Regular Access Points have only one output for Door Held Open that pulses for warning and is on steady for alarm while Non Reader Access Points have two outputs for Door Held Open, one for warning, and one for alarm.

Links

Access Point	Properties Name		×
- 🐺	Access Poin	t	
General 10	Configuration	Links	
Message		Link Description	
Forced En	try		
Door Held	Open		
Secure			
Door Not 0)pen		
		OK	Cancel

To establish a link click in the *Link Description* box beside the *Message* you want the link activated on. Then click the *Browse* button and select the desired link from the list presented. The name of the chosen link will be shown in the *Link Description* box to confirm the link programming.

Elevators

For elevator control the system needs to know which outputs are to be associated with which Elevator Reader. Every floor button on every elevator cab that is to be controlled requires a relay output to activate or deactivate. For example, if you want to control access to five different floors in a building with four elevators you will need twenty outputs.

Elevators		
🗎 <u>N</u> ew 🌗 🗄	Edit 🖙 Cancel 🗶 Delete 🖻 Copy 🏙 Eind 🗐 View	
Name		
New Elevator1		
Reader		
9 B	RC2-152-2\Reader 1	
Augusta bia	Calculated Issue	
Available Iter	ems Selected Items	
Description	n Description	
Floor 1 Cab	bB >>>	
Floor 2 Cab	b B a state of the	
Floor 3 Cab	b B i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	
Floor 4 Cab	b B S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S	
Floor 5 Cab	b B la	
Floor 6 Cab	b B and a second s	
Floor 7 Cab	b B la	
Floor 8 Cab	b B land land land land land land land land	
Floor 1 Cab	DA	
Floor 2 Cab	bA < 🗌	
Floor 3 Cab	bA	
Floor 4 Cab	bA 🔽	
,		
🖉 🖞 1 of 1		D DI
14 1 1011		

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Reader

Browse and select the desired elevator reader.

🛄 Elevators		×
📔 New 🔚 Save 🔊 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Delete 🛛 🗉	🗈 Copy 🛛 🏟 Eind 🛛 🏢 View	
Name		
New Elevator1		
1		
Reader		
9 RC2-152-2\Reader 1		
Available Items	Selected Items	
Description	Description	
Floor 1 Cab B	Floor 1 Cab A	
Floor 2 Cab B	Floor 2 Cab A	
Floor 3 Cab B	Floor 3 Cab A	
Floor 4 Cab B	Floor 4 Cab A	
Floor 5 Cab B	Floor 5 Cab A	
Floor 6 Cab B	Floor 6 Cab A	
Floor 7 Cab B	Floor 7 Cab A	
Floor 8 Cab B	Floor 8 Cab A	
	**	
[<] <] 1 of 1		Я

Available Items & Selected Items

Only general-purpose outputs related to the NC-100 (which the selected elevator reader is connected to) will be listed in *Available Items*.

Shift the floor outputs between available and selected to configure the elevator cab with the proper floor outputs.

Floor Groups

Create Floor Groups to limit access to only the floor included in the group.

Elevator Floor Groups	
🎦 New 🖳 Edit 🕫 Cancel 🗙 Delete 🖻 Copy 👫 Eind 🗐 View	
Name	
Cab A Floors 2,3,6	
Elevator	
5 Elevator Cab A	
Available Items Selected Items	
Description	
Floor 1 Cab A	
Floor 4 Cab A	
Floor 5 Cab A Floor 6 Cab A	
Floor 7 Cab A	
Floor 8 Cab A	
< < ↓ 1 of 4	D DI

Floor Groups are tied to schedules and work in conjunction with Access Levels to control floor access for cardholders.

The only floor buttons to become active are the ones included in the cardholder's Floor Group. Therefore cardholders can only go to the floors they have access to.

AccessPoint Groups

Access Point Groups is used to create groups of access points. Once created Access Point Groups can be given commands, or they can be used in links. Access points are grouped for convenience. Instead of issuing a command to six individual access points, one command could be sent to a group of six.

🚪 Access Point Groups	
🗎 New 📑 Edit 🗝 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Delete 🛛 🖶 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🖉 View	
Name	
New Access Point Group	
512 Network 156 Available Items Selected Items Description RC2:156:1\Reader 2 RC2:156:2\Reader 2 > RC2:156:3\Reader 2 > K K	
< ↓ 1 of 2	\triangleright \triangleright I

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

List All Devices

Selecting *List All Devices* will make all devices in the system available for this access point group.

List devices from Selected Network

Selecting *List devices from Selected Network* means that only devices from the selected network can be used in this access point group.

Available Items

Available Items will show all of the access points in the system, according to the previously selected list.

Selected Items

Selected Item lists the access points that are members of the access point group.

Input Groups

Input Groups is used to create groups of inputs. Once created *Input Groups* can be given commands, or they can be used in links. Inputs are grouped for convenience. Instead of issuing a disarm command to six individual inputs, one command could be sent to a group of six inputs.

🕐 Input Groups	
📔 New 📑 Edit 🖙 Cancel 🗙 Delete 📴 Copy 🖓 Eind 🗐 View	
Name	
New Input Group	
512 Network 156	
Available Items Selected Items	
Description Description	
RC2-156-1\Reader 1 Door Contact RC2-156-1\Reader 1 RTE	
RC2-156-1\Input 1 RC2-156-1\Reader 2 RTE	
RC2-156-1\Input 2 RC2-156-2\Reader 1 RTE	
RC2-156-1\Reader 2 Door Contact	
RC2-156-1\Input 3 RC2-156-3\Reader 1 RTE	
RC2-156-1\Input 4 RC2-156-3\Reader 2 RTE	
IDC16-156-1\Input 1 <	
IOC16-156-1\Input 2	
IOC16-156-1 \Input 3	
IOC16-156-1\Input 4 <<	
IOC16-156-1 \Input 5	
IOC16-156-1 \Input 6	
IOC16-156-1 Vinput 7	
⟨	

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

List All Devices

Selecting *List All Devices* will make all devices in the system available for this input group.

● List devices from Selected Network

Selecting *List devices from Selected Network* means that only devices from the selected network can be used in this input group.

Available Items

Available Items will show all of the inputs in the system, according to the previously selected list.

Selected Items

Selected Item lists the inputs that are members of the input group.

Output Groups

Output Groups is used to create groups of outputs. Once created *Output Groups* can be given commands, or they can be used in links. Outputs are grouped for convenience. Instead of issuing an on command to six individual outputs, one command could be sent to a group of six inputs.

😯 Output Groups	
New 📴 Edit 🕫 Cancel 🗙 Delete 🖻 Copy 🏘 Eind 📰 View	
Name	
New Output Group	
512 Network 156	
Available Items Selected Items	
Description	
BC2-156-1\Beader 1 Forced/Tamper BC2-156-1\Beader 1 Lock	
RC2-156-1\Reader 1 Door Held Open >>> RC2-156-1\Reader 2 Lock	
RC2-156-1\Reader 1 Alarm Shunt RC2-156-2\Reader 1 Lock	
RC2-156-1\Reader 2 Forced/Tamper RC2-156-2\Reader 2 Lock	
RC2-156-1\Reader 2 Door Held Open	
RC2-156-1\Reader 2 Alarm Shunt	
IOC16-156-1\Output 1	
IOC16-156-1\Output 2	
IOC16-156-1\Output 3	
IOC16-156-1\Output 4 <<	
IOC16-156-1\Output 5	
IOC16-156-1\Output 6	
IOC16-156-1\Output 7	
	D DI

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

List All Devices

Selecting *List All Devices* will make all devices in the system available for this output group.

List devices from Selected Network

Selecting *List devices from Selected Network* means that only devices from the selected network can be used in this output group.

Available Items

Available Items will show all of the outputs in the system, according to the previously selected list.

Selected Items

Selected Item lists the outputs that are members of the output group.

Interlock Groups

Interlock Groups is used to create groups of access points. These access points are only allowed to have one member open at a time. If one of these access point grants access and is opened none of the other members of the group will grant access. Commonly used in mantrap applications.

💯 Interlock Groups		
🗎 New 📑 Edit 🕫 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Delete 🛙 🖺 C	Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🛛 🎫 View	
Name New Interlock Group		
	Schedule	
1024 Network 4 (TCP/IP 154)	1Always	
Available Items	Selected Items	
Description RC2 4-4-1\Reader 1 RC2 4-4-1\Reader 2 RC2 4-3-1\Reader 1 RC2 4-1-1\Reader 1 RC2 4-1-1\Reader 2	Description RC2 4-3-1\Reader 2 RC2 4-2-1\Reader 1 RC2 4-2-1\Reader 2	
< ↓ 1 of 1		\triangleright \triangleright I

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

List All Devices

Selecting *List All Devices* will make all access points in the system available for this interlock group.

List devices from Selected Network

Selecting *List devices from Selected Network* means that only access points from the selected network can be used in this interlock group.

Available Items

Available Items will show all of the available access point in the system, according to the previously selected list.

Selected Items

Selected Item lists the outputs that are members of the output group.

Access Levels

Access Levels are the main way to designate when a cardholder is allowed access. Essentially *Access Levels* combine access points with schedules. (I.e. this door at these times and that door at those times, etc.)

General (Standard Access Levels)

Access Levels			
📔 New 📑 Edit 🕫 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Delete 🛛 🛱 Copy	/ 🖊 E	ind 🔛 View	
Name			
Net 152			
General Elevator			
Access Schedule			
2 business hrs.			
Available Items		Selected Items	
Description		Description	
RC2-154-1\Reader 1		RC2-152-1\Reader 1	
RC2-154-1\Reader 2	>>	RC2-152-1\Reader 2	
RC2-154-2\Reader 1		RC2-152-2\Reader 1	
RC2-154-2\Reader 2		RC2-152-2\Reader 2	
RC2-154-3\Reader 1		RC2-152-3\Reader 1	
RC2-154-3\Reader 2		RC2-152-3\Reader 2	
RC2-1\Reader 1	1	RC2-152-4\Reader 1	
RC2-1\Reader 2	<u>`</u>	RC2-152-4\Reader 2	
RC2-156-1\Reader 1	_		
RC2-156-1\Reader 2			
RC2-156-2\Reader 1			
RC2-156-2\Reader 2			
RC2-2\Reader 1			
<			D DI

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Available Items

Available Items will show all of the access points in the system, (except the ones that have already been selected).
Selected Items

Selected Item lists the access points that are members of the access level.

Access Schedule

For each required schedule shift access points from the *Available Item* list to the *Selected Items* list. Access levels can have many access schedules but each access point can only be selected for one schedule. Once selected the access point is removed from the available list. Not all of the schedules need to be used, nor do all of the access points need to be selected.

General (Multiple Access Levels)

Access Levels	
📔 New 🖶 Edit 🗠 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Delete 🛙 📴 Copy 🛛	🊧 Eind 🛛 🖽 View
Name	Access Level Type
New Access Level	Standard 💌
General Elevator	Standard Special Both
Access Point	Schedule
Reader#5	Always
Reader#6	Always
<	D DI

For systems with Multiple Access Levels selected an Access Level Type needs to be chosen for each Access Level created (see *System Settings* – System for information on selecting Multiple Access Levels). The 'Standard' access level type is used as a base or foundation access level. Only a 'Standard' access level can have elevator control. 'Special' access levels are additional access levels that can be given to a cardholder. Access level as 'Both' can be given to a cardholder as either, a 'Standard' access level, or a 'Special' access level.

See Cardholder General Tab (Multiple Access Levels) for information on giving these access levels to the cardholders.

There is more information on Special Access Levels under Reader Access.

Elevator

Access Levels	
📔 🗋 New 🔚 Save 🔊 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Delete 🛛 🛱 Copy	👫 Eind 🔠 View
Name	
Net 152	
General Elevator	
Floor Group Name	Schedule Name
Cab A Floors 2,3,6	Always
Cab B Floors 2,3,6	Always
	D DI

Under the *Elevator* tab *Floor Groups* are tied to *Schedules*. For *Elevator Access* to work the *Elevator* reader appropriate to the selected *Floor Groups* should have been selected under the General tab.

When access is granted on the *Elevator* reader the system checks to see which floor associated with that reader are to be enabled. The *Floor Group* determines these floors.

Finger Print Readers

🗧 Finger	Print Readers		
🎦 Add	🗗 Edit 🗙 Delete 📕? Config		
Address	Make	Name	

Before entering a cardholder's finger prints the reader needs to be setup.

Add a reader to the system.

🖶 Finger Print Devi	ces		_ 🗆 🗵
Finger Print Device			
Address	Description		
Address	Description		
Make	•		
RBHBIO-002			
BioScrypt Keico			
		ОК	Cancel

Select the manufacture of the Finger Print Reader and give the reader a meaningful description. The address entered here could actually be a Device ID.

Configure the reader according to the appropriate Finger Print Reader document. Look for Bioscrypt AxionV.pdf, Keico AxiomV.pdf, or RBH-BIO readerAxiomV.pdf on the AxiomVTM installation CD.

Finger Print Reader Query

Information can be obtained from the Finger Print Reader using Finger Print Reader Query.

🛱 Query Finger F	Print Reader	<u>1</u>	×
Connect			
C Serial Device ID IP Address Password Card number	TCP/IP	TCP Port 0	
			_

Enter the appropriate data as configure in the Finger Print Reader to connect to the reader. While connected to the reader you can execute commands on the reader. For more information see the documents on the AxiomVTM installation CD (Bioscrypt AxiomV.pdf, Keico AxiomV.pdf, or RBH-BIO readerAxiomV.pdf).

Departments

🛗 Depart	ments						IX
Mew 1	🖳 Edit	⊮⊃ Cancel	\times <u>D</u> elete	🐴 Eind	III View		
ID 0	Name						
Notes							
	of 0					\triangleright	DI

Here you can add the names of departments to fill the *Department 1* and *Department 2* fields in the *Cardholder – Personal* tab. These department names cannot be used in the *Departments* field. *Operator Profiles* does include access to this feature under *Modules*.

Companies

Companies		
🎦 New 🎐 Edit 🛛 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Delete	e 🛛 🖹 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🖉 View	
Name		
Testing		
-		
Contact	Phone #	
Jinder Riarh	(905) 670-1100	
Notes		
Contact Jinder		
1		
		D DI

A company is a cardholder group and is used in operator profiles.

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Contact

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Phone

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Notes

Notes provide an area to enter information pertaining to the company that doesn't fit into any of the other fields.

Assets

Add an Asset

Assets are usually portable equipment or hardware that needs to be kept track of, like laptop computers or specialty metering/monitoring equipment.

🗧 Assets				×
🖺 🗠 📴 Edit	Apply 🔊 Cancel	\mathbf{X} Delete	M Find 🔲 View	•ea∉ Photo
Asset ID Asse	t Description		Department	
				v
Card Holder	Last Name		First Name	
Photo Company				
Asset	picture		Card holder picture	;
Asset Picture 1	Show	Asset Pic	ture 2	Show

Asset ID

Up to a ten digit number may be entered here.

Asset Description

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Department

Select a department from the pull-down list.

Cardholder

ID

Browse the cardholder list and make a selection.

First Name / Last Name

First and last name will be inserted automatically for the selected ID.



View

An asset report can be generated to list all of the inputted assets along with their associated Cardholders.

Photo

Capture and save one or two pictures of the asset. The cardholder's picture will also be displayed, based on of course, the cardholder ID selected.

Company

The companies that the cardholder is associated with will be shown here.

Notes

Information regarding the asset can be entered here.

‡ Assets	×
🖀 New 🖶 Edit 🛛 Apply 🕫 Cancel 🗙 Delete 🏘 Eind 🔠 View 🕫	ea# Photo
Asset ID Asset Description Department	
	V
Card Holder ID Last Name First Name	
Photo Company	
Description	
Master Company	
Notes	
	D DI

Cardholder

The Cardholder screen is used to manage all of the cardholders in the system.

If you enter an existing *Cardholder's* name the system will advise you of this before creating a duplicate *Cardholder*.



Cardholder Screen

Cardholders	
📔 New 📴 Edit 💿 Apply 🕫 Cancel 🗈 Copy 🗸 🔀 Delete 🔒 Delete SAL 👜 Iris	» •
Card Number Last Name Copy Card Finger Print Cardholder Type Duplicate Card MultiCard General Personal Options CodeLinks Company Photo	View 📰 👻
Status Card Type Active Normal Issue Level PIN Code Usage Count 0 255 Activation Date 2010 Aug 9 00:00:00 2010 Aug 9 00:00:00 Access Level Special Access Levels	
Access Level	
< < 0 of 0	D DI

Сору



Copy Card

Copy Card will bring up the Copy Wizard to copy card data only from one card to one or more cards (e.g. Usage Count, Lock/Unlock, Activation Date, & De-activation Date).



Copy Cardholder

Copy Cardholder will bring up the *Copy Wizard* to copy cardholder data only from one cardholder to one or more cardholders (e.g. Address, City, State, Department, & Photo).

Duplicate Card

Duplicate Card is used to transfer a Cardholder's record information to a new card number. If the card number is the only data you want to change it is best to make a duplicate card with the new number.



.



Cardholder Report

This selection will create a report showing the data on the current cardholder.



Cardholder Reader Report

This selection will create a report showing all the readers that the specified cardholder(s) have access to.

Cardholder Reader Report will display all the readers that have access to the cardholders last to be highlighted.

MultiCards

Use *MultiCards* to bulk add cards to your database.

Chapter 7 Database

🛱 Add Multiple Cards		×
Start Card Number	Card	Status
End Card Number		
Access Level		
Active Date 21 Jun 2006 12:00:00 AM		
Expiry Date 12 Apr 2005 V 12:00:00 AM		
Start		

Start Card Number

Enter the card number of the first card to be added.

End Card Number

Enter the card number of the last card to be added

Access Level

Enter the Access Level that is to be programmed in all added cards.

Active Date

Enter the date that all cards are to be activated on. Selecting the current date will make the cards active right away.

Expiry Date

If applicable, enter the date that all cards are to expire on.

Start

Click *Start* to use the entered data to create new card in the system. Cards will be added sequentially starting at the *Start Card Number* and ending with the *End Card Number*.

Charl Card New Les	Card	Status	
Start Card Number	183	Added	
1000	184	Added	
nd Card Number	185	Added	
	186	Added	
1999	187	Added	
access Level	188	Added	
	189	Added	
2 Staff	190	Added	
1	191	Added	
ctive Date	192	Added	
1 -Aug-2008 🔹 12:00:00 am 🛖	193	Added	
	194	Added	
xpiry Date	195	Added	
🗹 1 - Jan - 2010 🔹 12:00:00 am 🛖	196	Added	
	197	Added	
	198	Added	
Start	198	Added	_
	100		

Card Number

Card Number is the number of the card held by the cardholder. After a *Card Number* has been assigned it cannot be edited. All other data can be edited.

Last Name

Last Name is the family name or surname of the cardholder. The cardholder cannot be saved if this field is left blank.

First Name

First Name is the given or common name of the cardholder.

Initials

'Initials' is a field available for saving the cardholder's initials. Either the cardholder's full initials or just their middle initials can be entered here.

Cardholder Type

Select from the pull-down list which *Cardholder Type* (if any) that this cardholder is going to be a member of. (For more information on *Cardholder Types* see page 274.)

Cardholder General Tab (Special Access Levels)	Cardholder	General	Tab	(Special	Access	Levels)
--	------------	---------	-----	----------	--------	---------

📬 Cardholders		
📔 New 💷 Edit 🛛 Apply 🗠 Cancel 🖻 Copy	🗸 🖌 <u>D</u> elete 🔒 Dele	ete SAL 👜 Iris 🛛 🎇
Card Number Last Name 12345 Dough	First Name Jonathan	Initials
Cardholder Type General Personal Options CodeLinks Company Ph] oto	
Status Card Type Active Normal Issue Level PIN Code Usage Count 0 255 Activation Date 2010 Aug 9 2010 Aug 9 0:00:00 2010 Aug 9 0:00:00 Access Level Special Access Levels	•	
Access Level		
<		D DI



Finger Prints

At least one Finger Print Reader must first be configured before you can enroll a cardholder's finger prints.

Enroll Finger	
Click 'Enroll' to start	
	Facility code
	Cancel

For more information on finger print enrollment see the documents on the AxiomVTM installation CD (Bioscrypt AxiomV.pdf, Keico AxiomV.pdf, or RBH-BIO readerAxiomV.pdf).

Status

The status of the card can be set to *Active, Inactive, Pending, Stolen, Destroyed, Expired, Lost,* and *Suspended.* New cards are set to *Active* unless their activation date is set to sometime in the future, in which case they are set to *Pending.* Cards with a deactivation date in the past are set to *Expired. Stolen, Destroyed, Lost,* and *Suspended* are different ways of tagging a card for audit purposes. Inactive is an unspecified way of disabling a card with operator commands or links. Only *Active* cards will be granted access, all others will be denied access based on the card's status.

Card Type

There are four card types, *Normal, Supervisor, Visitor*, and *Contractor*. Almost all cards will be left as Normal. The purpose of the *Visitor* card is to log the location of the visitor and not allow them free access to the premises. Visitors are controlled through the Visitor Manager (see page 279.)

Issue Level

Issue Level is used with magnetic strip cards only. The issue level is a number from zero to seven programmed into each Card. When a Card is first issued, its issue level should be programmed to zero to match the issue level field in each cardholder record, which automatically defaults to zero. If a card is lost, you can issue the cardholder with a new card programmed with a higher level, for example 1, and set the issue level field in the cardholder record to one as well. When you have done this, the old card with issue level 0 will not work and so cannot be used by someone who finds it to gain access.

The system also has the added benefit that the cardholder will always have the same card number in the history files.

PIN Code

PIN Code is a keypad-entered code. A *PIN Code* is required for Card & Code operation or for code only operation.



AxiomVTM only accepts *PIN Codes* that are transmitted in 8-bit format.



Some keypads and keypad-readers output their data in a card format (e.g. standard 26-bit). If these units are being used, add the code being punched in as a card number and not as a *PIN Code*.

Usage Count

Usage Count is used to give a cardholder a limited number uses. (E.g. a cardholder could purchase a limited number of days at a Health Club. Each time the cardholder enters the club one use is deduced.) When the count reaches zero access is denied ("No Usage Count"). The count can be set anywhere from 1 to 254. A usage count of 255 means unlimited usage.

Activation Date

When entering a new card the *Activation Date* defaults to the current date. This date can be changed if necessary. If the *Activation Date* is put into the future the card will not grant access until that date.

Deactivation Date

The *Deactivation Date* will specify the first date that the card will no longer work. If the *Deactivation Date* is not checked then the card will never expire.

Access Level

Select previously defined access levels from the pop-up Window. Access levels determine when and where an access code is valid.

Special Access Levels

Special Access Levels allows the operator to customize the cardholder's access. Select an *Access Schedule* then check which access points the cardholder can access during that time. Additional schedules can be selected and access points checked for them. This is generally used along with the regular Access Level as an enhancement. Access points checked under a schedule will not show up under any other schedule.

Run a *Cardholder Reader Report* to see a complete list of access points the cardholder has access to and the schedules associated with these access points.

If either Access Level or Special Access Levels allows access then access will be granted.



Delete Special Access Level

Click *Delete Special Access Level* to remove all special access levels for the current cardholder.

Notes

Notes provide an area to enter information pertaining to the cardholder that doesn't fit into any of the other fields.

Cardholder	General	Tab	(Multir	ole A	ccess	Levels)
Cui unoiuvi	General		(1)			

🕶 Cardholders		x
📔 New 🖳 Edit Apply 🕫 Cancel 🗎 Copy	🔹 🗙 Delete 🔒 Delete SAL 🐞 Iris	» ▼
Card Number Last Name 12345 Dough	First Name Initials	
Cardholder Type General Personal Options CodeLinks Company Pho] pto	
Status Card Type Active Normal Issue Level PIN Code Usage Count 0 255 Activation Date 2010 Aug 00:00:00 Deactivation Date 00:00:00 00:00:00 Access Level Special Access Levels Multi Access		
<	1 <	 >

Multiple Access Levels

With *Multiple Access Levels* selected a cardholder can be given up to one standard access level and ten special access levels. In cases where two or more access levels provide access to the same access point then access will be granted if **any** access level would allow access. Cardholders do not have to have a standard access level; they <u>could</u> be

given only special access levels. Access levels selected as 'Both' could be given to a cardholder as either a standard or special access level.

Information on turning on Multiple Access Levels is given in *System Options* - System. Information on creating access levels is given in Access Levels - General (Multiple Access Levels).

Cardholder Personal Tab

Terdholders	
📔 New 📑 Edit 🛛 Apply 🌇 Cancel 🛛 🗈 Copy 🗸 🔀 Delete 🦀 Delete SAL 🐌 Iris	» *
Card Number Last Name First Name Initials 12345 Dough Jonathan Initials	_
Cardholder Type General Personal Options CodeLinks Company Photo	
Street Address	
City	
State/Province Country	
Zip/Postal Phone #	
Department	
Email	
Department 1	
None	
Department 2	
None	
<	D DI

Street Address

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here. Multiple lines are provided for this information.

City

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

State/Province

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here. Use the pull down list to select from previously entered data.

Country

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here. Use the pull down list to select from previously entered data.

Zip/Postal

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Phone

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Department

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here. Use the pull down list to select from previously entered data.

eMail

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Department 1

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here. Use the pull down list to select from previously entered data.

Department 2

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here. Use the pull down list to select from previously entered data.

Cardholder Options Tab

🕶 Cardholders						- • • X
🛛 🗎 <u>N</u> ew 🖳 <u>E</u> dit	Apply 🔊 Cancel	Copy	- X Delete	🔒 Delete SAL	ቅ Iris	» •
	Last Name Dough		First Name Jonathan		Initials	
] Options CodeLinks Cor	mpany Photo				
Description Reader 1 Reader 2	Loc	k/Unlock Hig	h Security		Start Vacati	
' ☐ Ignore High Se ☐ Extended Unic	-	Trace thi	s card ntipassback		2010 Au End Vacatio	n 1
Escort Require		🔲 Ignore A	uto void		Start Vacatio	on 2
0 < < 1 of 1					2010 Au	9 •

Access Point List

Select from the list which access points the cardholder has *Lock/Unlock* (double access granted) privilege, and which access points the cardholder has *High Security* on/off (quadruple access granted) capability.

Ignore High Security

When selected, the cardholder is able to gain access at readers that are in high security mode.

Extended Unlock

When selected, the cardholder is provided with extended unlock time (i.e., the cardholder is given extra time during which the door remains unlocked. This is used mainly for the disabled, the elderly, or anyone else that requires additional time to get through the door.)

Escort Required

When selected, a cardholder can only gain access when accompanied by a supervisor card. After the cardholder's card is presented, the supervisor's card must be presented immediately thereafter. Both the cardholder and supervisor are logged as having accessed the door.

Trace This Card

When selected, the system reports a trace alarm to the monitor screen whenever the card is used. Only access points with their *Code Tracing* schedule on will report an alarm.

Ignore Antipassback

When selected, the system ignores normal antipassback restrictions for this cardholder.

Ignore Auto Void

When this feature is selected, the cardholder will not be deactivated when the "Auto void cards after:" is activated.

Stealth Mode

When the schedule is on, *Stealth Mode* is active. During this mode, all cardholder activity is not printed or displayed. It is however still logged to history.

Vacation

Use the *Vacation* setting to define up to two vacation periods for the cardholder. During defined vacation periods the cardholder's card is inactive.

Start Date 1

Start Date 1 is the date (MM-DD-YYYY¹⁶) on which vacation 1 starts.

End Date 1

End Date 1 is the date (MM-DD-YYYY 12) on which vacation 1 ends.

Start Date 2

Start Date 2 is the date (MM-DD-YYYY¹²) on which vacation 2 starts.

End Date 2

End Date 2 is the date (MM-DD-YYYY¹²) on which vacation 2 ends.

For example a one-day vacation on August 22, 2003 would use 08-22-2003 as the *Start Date* and 08-23-2003 as the *End Date*. Likewise a 10-day vacation starting on September 1, 2003 would use 09-01-2003 as the *Start Date* and 09-10-2003 as the *End Date*.

¹⁶ Date is displayed in the format selected in the Windows – Control Panel – Regional Settings Properties-Date. If a two-digit year was chosen then it will be displayed in that form here.

Cardholder Code Links Tab

Terdholders	
📔 New 📴 Edit 🛛 Apply 🌇 Cancel 🔋 Copy 🗸 🔀 Delete 🧁 Delete SAL 🐌 Iris	» ▼
Card Number Last Name First Name Initials	_
12345 Dough Jonathan	_
Cardholder Type	
General Personal Options CodeLinks Company Photo	1
Reader Name Link Name	
< < 1 of 1	\triangleright \triangleright I

Code Links

Code Links are a way of executing links based on the grant access of the cardholder at a specific access point. Each access point can be assigned only one link. To add a *Code Link* click in the blank box under *Reader Name* and then click the browse button. Select from the list of accessible reader then do the same for the link. When the cardholder is granted access at the access point the link will be executed.

Cardholder Company Tab

🖼 Cardholders							x
🛛 🎦 <u>N</u> ew 🖳 Edit	Apply 🔊 Cancel	🗈 Copy 🔹 🕻	< <u></u> Delete (🔒 Delete SAL	🕭 Iris		» ▼
Card Number 12345	Last Name Dough		Name iathan		Initials		
Cardholder Type General Personal (Dptions CodeLinks	npany Photo					
Description ✓ Master Company							
🔽 Select All							
<						⊳	DI

Companies

Cardholder groups are called companies. Which companies (groups) the cardholder is a member of is selected here. Cardholder companies (groups) are used in operator profiles to determine which cardholders the operator will have access to.

Cardholder Photo Tab

📬 Cardholders		- • ×
📔 <u>N</u> ew 🖳 <u>E</u> dit Apply	🖙 Cancel 🔋 🗈 Copy 🗸 🔀 Delete 🔒 Delete SAL 🐞 Iris	» *
Card Number Last Nam 12345 Dough	e First Name Initials	
Cardholder Type General Personal Options	CodeLinks Company Photo	1
Picture(1) File Path	Signature File (1) Path	
Picture(2) File Path	Signature File (2) Path	
i 🔊 🔊 🖌		8
⟨		D DI

Templates

This box lists the badge templates. The selected template is displayed in the box on the right side of the window.



Take Picture

Click the *Take Picture* icon to capture a picture.

Image Edit Window	
	Acquire
	Save
	Capture
	Advanced
	Close

While live video is being shown on this screen, click *Acquire* to freeze the image. Click on the image to produce a box the size to be captured. The box can then be moved around to encompass the desired area. Click *Save* to save the image within the box for this cardholder. To freeze a new image, click *Capture* and the image will be returned to live video. *Advanced* will open up a window for the modification of the advanced settings of the video source, and *Close* will shut down the Image window without saving an image.



Print Card

Clicking Print Card will send the displayed card to the printer.



Setup Printer

Setup Printer is used to edit the printer setup.

Capture Signature

♥

Capture Signature is used to acquire a signature of the cardholder.

IntegriSign Signature Capture	×
Signer Name:	
ePad device initialized properly. Start signing	
	-1
David M.	
Jame M	
	- 1
OK <u>C</u> lear Cancel	



20

Flip Card Side to Front

Flip Card Side to Front is used to change the card view from back to front.

Flip Card Side to Back

Flip Card Side to Back is used change the card view from front to back.

Picture File Path

Picture File Path shows the name of the cardholder image. Images are saved to the Images.~~~ folder. Cardholder image can also be saved from still pictures. Use the browse button to search for these pictures. When the desired picture is found click *Open* and the image will be converted to jpeg format and saved.

Cardholder Type

Cardholder Types	X
Bew ∰Edit ∽ Cancel X Delete	
ID Name 0 Access Level Badge	
Available Items	Selected Items
Master Mon-Fri 6:00am-7:00pm	
	D DI

Cardholder Types is a means of grouping cardholders. Each 'type' has a selected list of Access Levels and Badge templates. A cardholder that is given a cardholder type can only be given access levels and assigned badge templates that are listed for that cardholder type. Cardholders not given a *Cardholder Type* can be given any Access Levels and can be assigned any Badge templates.

Asset Tracking¹⁷

This screen is used to configure your assets.

Asset Configuration

Assign the asset an ID <u>number</u> and give it a description. A department can be selected from the list. Search for and chose a cardholder to be the asset holder.



¹⁷ This selection is only available if the optional license for the Asset Tracking Software has been purchased and installed.

Apply

Select *Apply* to have the system execute a partial download to the panels right away so that any changes made will take effect immediately.

Photo

In edit mode select *Photo* to acquire an image of the asset.





Select

Click *Select* and browse for the required picture. Crop as needed and save as *Save* (1) or *Save* (2). For best results keep the aspect ratio as close to 1:1.25 as possible.

Reader Access

Cardholder Reader Access Update

Reader Access or Special Access Levels are used to customize a cardholder's access. It can be combined with regular Access Levels or used on its own. Instead of a cardholder being a member of an access group in cardholder can be given their own personal access level.

• <u>A</u> do	d X Delete Eind View v Access Schedule 1 Always					
Reade	ers	Card	nolders			
	Description		Card Number	Last Name	First Name	Initials
	RC2-154-1\Reader 1			Livingstone	Steve	
	RC2-154-1\Reader 2			Malik	Renu	
	RC2-154-2\Reader 1			Mayes	Dave	
	RC2-154-2\Reader 2			Riarh	Sukhi	
	RC2-154-3\Reader 1		1895	Wong	Jimmy	
	RC2-154-3\Reader 2					
	RC2-152-1\Reader 1					
	RC2-152-1\Reader 2					
	RC2-152-2\Reader 1					
	RC2-152-2\Reader 2					
	RC2-152-3\Reader 1					
	RC2-152-3\Reader 2					
	RC2-152-4\Reader 1					
_	RC2-152-4\Reader 2					
	RC2-1\Reader 1					
	RC2-1\Reader 2					

This utility is used to update the special accesses for cardholders. You can add one or multiple access point (for a schedule) to one or multiple cardholders, or you can delete one or multiple access point (for a schedule) from one or multiple cardholders.

Find

Find Cardholder and *Find Readers* will both bring up the search window. Search for the cardholders whose access you want to edit. Then search for the readers you want to edit. Finally browse and select the schedule to use in your edit.



Add

Click Add to have these items included in the cardholders' access.



Delete

Click Delete to have these items removed from the cardholders' access.



Only special access can be affected this way. Access given by a regular Access Level cannot be changed by this method.

View



Reader Cardholder Report

This selection will create a report showing all the cardholders that have access to the specified reader(s).



Cardholder Reader Report

This selection will create a report showing all the readers that the specified cardholder(s) have access to.

Cardholder Reader Report will display all the readers that have access to the cardholders last to be highlighted.

Visitor Management¹⁸

The Visitor Management option is used to control and track visitors to a site.

To add a visitor into the system the card they are to use must first be entered into the cardholder screen and configured as *Card Type* visitor. The first thing to be done therefore is to create cards that are going to be used by visitor to the site. Give each card an appropriate Access Level depending on where you wish to allow the visitor to go. Cards may be given different Access Levels as required for your system and site. Visitor can then be assigned cards with Access Levels appropriate to their needs.

	•	C	
and the state of the second			

It is best to keep unassigned visitor cards deactivated until needed.

Cardholders					
🖬 Save 🗐 Edit	: Apply 🌇 Cancel 🖹	Copy 🔹 🗙 <u>D</u> elete	🔒 Delete SAL	🙀 Eind 🔠 View 🝷	
ard Number	Last Name	First Name		Initials	
001	Visitor	Card 1			
General Personal	Options CodeLinks Compa	any Photo			
Status	Card Type				
Active	Normal	<u> </u>			
Issue Level	PIN Code Us Normal Supervisor				
	Visitor Contractors				
Activation Date	▼ 12:00:00 AM ÷				
Deactivation Dat					
12/12/2007	💌 12:00:00 AM 🗮				
	Constitution of south and	ites			
Access Level	Special Access Levels No	ves			
Ac	cess Level				
	,				
a					-
🗍 🌖 New Recor	rđ				\square

¹⁸ This selection is only available if the optional license for the Visitor Management Software has been purchased and installed.

Chapter 7 Database



After visitor cards have been created select *Visitors* from the Database menu or toolbar to configure visitors for the system.

€ Axiom ¥	isitor										×
1 New	⊡ ⁄ Edit	× Delete	⊮⊃ Cancel	🍂 Search	ar Check In	🔏 Check Out	Receipt	路 Track	📄 Email		
Last Name National ID	Assets	Track Ph		First Name Card Number npany	0						
Reason Date of f Phone Email Employe Notes	to visit Birth					Address City State Country Postal Code					
Last Nam Dept Last Visit Time Allo	ed 12:0	10:00 AM				First Name Employee ca Checked In Checked Ou]
	fO									\triangleright	D

The *Last Name* and *First Name* fields are mandatory fields and must have data before you can save the visitor while the *NationalID* field is optional. All three of these fields are 'quick search' fields. Type data into the 'quick search' field and hit *Enter*. The 'quick search' field will call up the record with matching data or will produce a list of records to choose from.

Card Number is also a 'quick search' field and is ideal for calling up a record when a visitor is checking out.



Add

Click Add to enter a new visitor.

🖳 Edit

Click Edit to modify an existing visitor.



Save

Click *Save* to save changes made by adding a new visitor or modifying an existing one.



Click *Delete* to permanently remove a visitor from the database.

Cancel

Click *Cancel* to exit edit mode and not save any changes made.

M Search

Click *Search* to call up a search screen to look for a specific visitor.

👫 Cardholders	×
General Advance	1
Search Field Last Name	
Search Text [All Selected]	
Partial Search	Search Cancel

Select the search field, enter the search criteria, and click search. The results of the search will be posted in the new screen.

/isitors				J
Card Number	Last Name	First Name	National ID	
1001	Malik	Renu	67456	
Card Number Last Name First Name National ID				
	Number Last Name First Name National ID			

🄏 🔹 Check In

Click *Check In* to have the visitor checked into the system. Checking in will activate the visitor's card.

🄏 🔹 Check Out

Click *Check Out* to have the visitor checked out of the system. Checking out will deactivate the visitor's card.

🖀 Track

Click *Track* to display the access points that the visitor has been granted access to while checked-in. This screen doesn't update automatically. You need to click on *Track* button every time to refresh Visitor's activity.

Receipt

Click *Receipt* to print a receipt for a visitor's assets.

🔒 Email

Click on *Email* to send an email to the cardholder being visited. For this to work the senders email information must be configured in *Visitor Config* under *System Settings*.

After configuring the sender's email under the system settings, the being visited cardholder's Personal Tab must have an email address.

I
🖼 Cardholders	
🎦 New 📴 Edit 🛛 Apply 🕫 Cancel 🗈 Copy 🕞 🗙 Delete 🐣 Delete SAL 🏘 I	Eind 🔝 View 🔹 🛛 🐥
Card Number Last Name First Name	Initials
2 Riarh Kanty	
General Personal Options CodeLinks Company Photo	
Street Address	
Chu	
City	
State/Province Country	
Zip/Postal Phone #	
Department	
Email	
kanty@rbh-access.com	
	D DI

General

🖶 Axiom V	isitor										×
E Save	Edit.	X Delete	🖍 Cancel	ph Search	Check In	Check Out	Luu Receipt	िद्ध Track	<u>نے</u> Email		
Last Name National ID	Mayes 895623			First Name Card Number	Dave 1002						
General	Assets	Track Ph	oto Cor	mpany	,						
Reason Date of B Phone		12/30/	/1899	T	•	Address City State Country					
Email Employe Notes	r					Postal Code					
Last Nam Dept						First Name Employee ca	rd 0				
Last Visite Time Allo	Ľ					Checked In Checked Ou					
< < Nev	w Record									D	DI

Personal Information data is optional and specific to the visitor and not to the card.

Select who is being visited by clicking on the browse button [..] and search for the appropriate cardholder. *Department* and *Employee Card* will be filled in by the system.

Last visited is also filled in by the system.

Select *Time Allotted* to create an automatic Late Alarm by system if visitor is late in checking out.

Assets

🗧 Axiom V	isitor										×
1		×	ŝ	<i>i</i> 4	- 23		<u> </u>	22	لقيد		
New	<u>S</u> ave	Delete	Cancel	Search	Check In	Check Out	Receipt	Track	Email		
Last Name	Mayes			First Name	Dave		_				
National ID	89562			Card Number							
riadonario	83362	5		Cara Humber	11002						
General	Assets	Track Ph	ioto 🗍 Co	mpany							
			-								
	-	P	Laptop Blue ba	a							
	0										
1	5										
- 14	Long Mar										
	1										
	-										
			I								
Last Nam	ne Ria	rh				First Name	Parmin	der			
Dept						Employee ca	ard 3		_		
						Employee ca	ara j-				
Last Visit	ed 124	00:00 AM				Checked In					
Time Allo	1	00.00 AM				Checked Ou	l l				
	0										
	F2									\triangleright	DI

Under the *Assets* tab, in edit mode, the operator can enter data concerning anything that the visitors brought with them to the site.

To print a receipt for these assets click on the *Receipt* button.

If there is any information entered under a visitor's asset then a reminder will pop up when the visitor checks out. After the visitor has checked out this asset data is deleted.

Track

🗧 Axiom 🕻	/isitor										×
웥 <u>N</u> ew	⊡ ⁄ <u>E</u> dit	X Delete	⊮⊃ Cancel	🍂 Search		🔏 Check Out	Receipt	🚵 Track	📄 Email		
Last Name National ID	Mayes 895623			First Name Card Number	Dave 1002						
General	Assets	Track P	hoto Cor	mpany							
	5	2	Date 12/13/200	17 11:31:30 AM		Rea RC2	der 102-1\Rea	ader 2			
Last Nar Dept	ne Ria	ſh				First Name Employee ca	Parmir rd ³	nder			
Last Visi Time Allo		00:00 AM				Checked In Checked Ou		/2007 11:31:	17 AM		
 	of 2									Þ	DI

The *Track* tab will display the access points that the visitor has been granted access to since their check-in time. Simply click on the track button to display the information.

Ē

Only visitors that are checked-in can be tracked. If the visitor has checked-out you can get information on where they have been from the Visitors' History Report.

Photo

🗧 Axiom V	isitor/									×
*	_	×	K)	<i>8</i> 4				88	<u>_</u>	
New	Edit Edit	Delete	Cancel	Search	Check In	Check Out	Receipt	Track	Email	-
Last Name	Mayes			First Name	Dave					
National ID	895623			Card Number	0					TI
	,									
Ground	Acres 1	Track P							100	
General	Assets	Track Pr	noto Co	mpany						
Picture File	•									
brownj.jpg										
,										
Sigature F	ïle									
1										
						(ii)				
			Ő	1 💎 🛛	6				<u> </u>	6
20	if 2									D DI

The *Photo* tab shows all the templates from the visitors' badging template module. Only the fields valid for the visitor management will be selectable in visitors' badging templates module.

Chapter 7 Database

Company

🕂 Axiom Vi	sitor									×
1	9	×	K)	<u>ĝ</u> ĝ				8	<u>_</u>	
New	<u>E</u> dit	Delete	Cancel	Search	Check In	Check Out	Receipt	Track	Email	
Last Name	-			First Name					1	
	Mayes				Dave					app
National ID	895623			Card Number	0				4	-
General	Assets	Track Pł	ooto Con	ipany					ACCESS:	
Gonordi	10000	nder [n		(party)						
Desc	ription									
Mast	er Compar	iy								
👌 👌 2 of	2									\triangleright \triangleright
P										

Company tab shows the companies assigned to the visiting visitor.

Custom Fields

€ Axiom ¥	isitor									2	×
1	9	×	K)	<i>6</i> 4				28	÷		
New	<u>E</u> dit	Delete	Cancel	Search	Check In	Check Out	Receipt	Track	Email		
Last Name	Malik			First Name	Renu		_				
National ID	67456			Card Number							
	1				1						
		1		1,							
General	Assets	Track P	hoto Cor	mpany Cus	tom Fields						
						10/16/2000	-				
Ti	itle										
			-								
< < 1 of	f2									\triangleright \triangleright	

Like cardholder, visitors' custom fields can be designed under Tools\custom fields\visitors and those fields are shown in the visitor screen as a new tab.



AxiomLinks™

AxiomVTM includes the *AxiomLinks*TM command script utility. *AxiomLinks*TM allows single pre-programmed events, single operator commands, complex sequences of pre-programmed events, or complex sequences of operator commands to be stored and executed later at the NC100 level without any action on the part of the operator.

Using *AxiomLinks*TM any system event or combination of events may be preprogrammed to invoke any other event or combination of events. *AxiomLinks*TM is schedulable, functions globally without the PC online and may be used to automate almost any activity in the system. Authorized system operators may execute these *AxiomLinks*TM manually from the PC as well. Links may be configured to execute once or for a specified duration ranging from 1 to 120 seconds or minutes.

Use this window to define links that may be used in *Operator Commands, Code Reader Linking*, Advanced Programming for Outputs, Advanced Programming for Inputs, and Advanced Programming for Access Points.

	el 🗙 Delete 🖹 Copy 👫 Eind 🗍	View			
9					
	-				
neral Pending Commands	:				
512 net 156					
Command	Device	Action	Command Type	Value Mir	n/Se
Set input	RC2-156-1\Input 1	Disarm Input	Timed	5 Se	с
Set Output	IOC16-156-3\Output 2	On	Timed	5 Se	с
Reset Input	RC2-156-1\Input 2	Arm Input	Timed	10 Se	с

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

General

512 ... net 156

Before creating any links select the network the link is to work on.

AxiomLinksTM are executed by the NC-100s and therefore only work within a network.

Command

Click in the *command* box, and then use the drop down arrow to view the list of available commands.

- Set Access Point Feature
- Reset Access Point Feature
- Set Access Point Group Feature
- Reset Access Point Group Feature
- Grant Access
- Set Output Counter
- Set Input

- Reset Input
- Set Input Group
- Reset Input Group
- Set Output
- Reset Output
- Set Output Group
- Reset Output Group
- Initialize NC100

Device

Click in the *Device* box, and then use the drop down arrow to view the list of available devices (all or from a selected network).

Action

Click in the *Action* box, and then use the drop down arrow to view the list of available devices. The actions available will depend upon the command and device that were selected.

Command Type

- Semi-permanent: Execute the command now.
 - Permanent: Execute the command now; then disregard all commands except permanent commands and commands from an operator.
- Timed: Execute the command now. At the end of the specified time confirm what state the device should be in and set that state. (E.g. at the end of a 30 minute Unlock command, if the Access Point's unlocked schedule indicates that the Access Point should be unlocked, then it will remain unlocked.)

Value

Value is number from 0 to 127 used with the seconds/minutes box to specify the time for the *Timed* command.

Min/Sec

This field indicates whether the Value for the Timed command is in minutes or seconds.

Pending Commands

Pending Commands are semi-permanent commands that may be programmed to execute an $AxiomLinks^{TM}$ Once, Daily, Weekly or monthly. Note that pending commands execute independent of any Schedule association. The *Pending Command* will execute the link that is programmed on the *General* tab.

* AxiomLinks	<u>- 🗆 ×</u>
🖀 New 📑 Edit 🕫 Cancel 🗙 Delete 🖻 Copy 🙀 Eind 🗐 View	
Name	
Grant Access Reader 2	
General Pending Commands	
Start Date	
☑ 18/08/2003	
Time	
5 :35:00 PM	
Туре	
C Dnce	
O Daily	
Weekly	
C Monthly	
Execute On Holidays	

Start Date

The *Start Date* is the first date that the link will be executed on. Click on the down arrow to bring up a calendar to select the date from or type in the date directly.

Time

Select the time of day the link is to be executed. Scroll up and down or type in the required time.

Туре

- Once: Occurs one time only at the set time and date.
- Daily: Occurs each day at the set time, from start date forward.
- Weekly: Occurs every seven days at the set time, beginning on the start date.
- Monthly: Occurs each month on the set date and at the set time.

☑ Execute On Holiday

Check *Execute On Holiday* to have the system ignore the holiday day-of-the-week and verify the true day-of-the-week to see if the *Weekly Pending Command* should be executed.

AxiomLinks™ Command Summary

Input Commands	State	Time
Set Input Status	Disarm	Y
Set Input Group Status	Disaini	T
Reset Input Status	Arm	Y
Reset Input Group Status	AIIII	1
Output Commands	State	Time
	On	Y
Set Output Status Set Output Group Status		r
Reset Output Status	Off	Y
Reset Output Group Status		1
Preset Output Counter		N
Access Point Commands	State	Time
-	State	-
Grant access	-	Y Y
Set Access Point Feature	High Security	Y
Reset Access Point Feature	Two Person	
	Door Held Open Warning	
	Interlock	
	Unlock	
	Reader Required	
	Keypad Required	
	Disable RTE	
	Antipassback Enable	
	Code Tracing	
	Facility Code Mode	
	Report Access Granted	
	Report RTE Access Granted	Time
Cardholder Commands Activate Cardholder	State	Time N
	-	
Deactivate Cardholder	-	N
Reset Cardholder Area Miscellaneous Commands	-	Ν
Miscellaneous Commanus		Time
	State	Time
Test battery	-	Y
Test battery Initialize NC100	-	Y N
Test battery Initialize NC100 APG Feature Commands	- - State	Y N Time
Test battery Initialize NC100 APG Feature Commands Set APG Feature	- - State High Security	Y N
Test battery Initialize NC100 APG Feature Commands	- - State High Security Two Person	Y N Time
Test battery Initialize NC100 APG Feature Commands Set APG Feature	- - State High Security Two Person Door Held Open Warning	Y N Time
Test battery Initialize NC100 APG Feature Commands Set APG Feature	- - State High Security Two Person Door Held Open Warning Interlock	Y N Time
Test battery Initialize NC100 APG Feature Commands Set APG Feature	- - State High Security Two Person Door Held Open Warning Interlock Unlock	Y N Time
Test battery Initialize NC100 APG Feature Commands Set APG Feature	- - State High Security Two Person Door Held Open Warning Interlock Unlock Reader Required	Y N Time
Test battery Initialize NC100 APG Feature Commands Set APG Feature	- - State High Security Two Person Door Held Open Warning Interlock Unlock Reader Required Keypad Required	Y N Time
Test battery Initialize NC100 APG Feature Commands Set APG Feature	- - State High Security Two Person Door Held Open Warning Interlock Unlock Reader Required Keypad Required Disable RTE	Y N Time
Test battery Initialize NC100 APG Feature Commands Set APG Feature	- - State High Security Two Person Door Held Open Warning Interlock Unlock Reader Required Keypad Required Disable RTE Antipassback Enable	Y N Time
Test battery Initialize NC100 APG Feature Commands Set APG Feature	- - State High Security Two Person Door Held Open Warning Interlock Unlock Reader Required Keypad Required Disable RTE Antipassback Enable Code Tracing	Y N Time
Test battery Initialize NC100 APG Feature Commands Set APG Feature	- - State High Security Two Person Door Held Open Warning Interlock Unlock Reader Required Keypad Required Disable RTE Antipassback Enable Code Tracing Facility Code Mode	Y N Time
Test battery Initialize NC100 APG Feature Commands Set APG Feature	- - State High Security Two Person Door Held Open Warning Interlock Unlock Reader Required Keypad Required Disable RTE Antipassback Enable Code Tracing	Y N Time

Global Commands

Global Commands are $AxiomLinks^{TM}$ executed by the CommsServer. The CommsServer has access to all of the system's networks. This means that an event on one network could cause a link to be executed on another network.

繸 Gla	obal Commands					_ 🗆 ×
1	New 🎐 Edit 🛛 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Dele	te 🛛 🖹 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🗍 📰 View				
Name	•					
Globa	al Command 1					
Gen	eral					
0	Command	Device	Action	Command Type	Value (Min/Sec
9	Set Access Point Feature	RC2 - 1\Reader 1	High Security	Timed	5 :	Sec
N	刘 1 of 1					D DI

Global Commands are programmed the same as *AxiomLinks*TM except a network does not have to be specified. There are a few commands that are available in *Global Commands* that are not available in *AxiomLinks*TM. These commands include 'Set Keypad' (to arm a SafeSuiteTM panel) and 'Reset Keypad' (to disarm a SafeSuiteTM panel). See *AxiomLinks*TM General for more information. 'Initialize NC-100', 'Activate Card', and 'Deactivate Card' are also *Global Commands* that are not available in *AxiomLinks*TM.

<i>20</i> 9 G	ilobal Commands		
	📴 Save 🗐 Edit 🔊 Cancel 🛛 🗙 D	elete 🛛 🖻 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🖉 View	¢
Nam	ne		
Nev	w Global Command		
Ge	eneral		
	Command	Device	Action
		-	
	Reset Output		
	Set Output Group Reset Output Group		
	Set Keypad		
	Reset Keypad Initialize NC100		
	Activate Card	-	
	Deactivate Card		

RBH Access Technologies Inc.

Facility Codes

There are two sets of numbers encoded in every card. One assigns a unique access code ID number to the card and the other identifies that card as belonging to a specific facility, i.e. the *Facility Code*.

Facility Codes are used to group cards together so they only work for one AxiomVTM system. There may be several cards manufactured with the same access code number. When coupled with the *Facility Code*, the cards get their unique identity. For example, two cards are both numbered 56,248. One card has a *Facility Code* of 2 and the other has a *Facility Code* of 37. A system that is set to accept only cards with a *Facility Code* of 2 will not grant access to the card with a *Facility Code* of 37. If you do not know the *Facility Code* of your cards, simply present the card to a reader and the system will display the *Facility Code*. Each reader can be assigned up to 16 *Facility Codes*.



A single site or system may be configured to accept multiple *Facility Codes*. A *Facility Code* may be assigned to work at all Access Points in the system or at specific readers only.

🛾 New 🌗 Edit 🛛 Cancel 🛛 🗙 🛛	elete 🖹 Copy 🏙 Find 📰 View	
ility Code		
00		
Availble Items	Selected Items	
Description	Description	
RC2 1-1-1\Reader1	RC2 2-1-1\Reader 1	
RC2 1-1-1\Reader2	RC2 2-1-1\Reader 2	
RC2 3*1*1\Reader 1	RC2 2-2-1\Reader 1	
RC2 3*1*1\Reader 2	RC2 2-2-1\Reader 2	
RC2 3*2*1\Reader 1	RC2 2-3-1\Reader 1	
RC2 3*2*1\Reader 2	RC2 2-3-1\Reader 2	
RC2 3*3*1\Reader 1	RC2 2-4-1\Reader 1	
RC2 3*3*1\Reader 2	RC2 2-4-1\Reader 2	
RC2 3*4*1\Reader 1	RC2 2-5-1\Reader 1	
RC2 3*4*1\Reader 2	<< RC2 2-5-1\Reader 2	
RC2 3*5*1\Reader 1	RC2 2-6-1\Reader 1	
RC2 3*5*1\Reader 2	RC2 2-6-1\Reader 2	
RC2 3*6*1\Reader 1	RC2 2-7-1\Reader 1	
RC2 3*6*1\Reader 2	RC2 2-7-1\Reader 2	▼

When using multiple *Facility Codes*, cards having the same access code, but different *Facility Codes* will be read as the same card. AxiomVTM uses only the access code to identify a cardholder, even though access may be granted based on the *Facility Code*.



(P

If no Facility Code is programmed, then <u>any</u> Facility Code will be accepted.

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Available Items

Available Items will show all of the access points in the system, (except the ones that have already been selected).

Selected Items

Selected Item lists the access points requiring the facility code.

Message Ports

Message Ports

Save

Edit

Name

New Message Port

Port Type

Messaging Protocol

Inactive

Unidirectional

I < New Record</td>

Use Message Ports to configure the ASCII ports of your system.

Name

Up to 50 alphanumeric characters may be entered here.

Port Type

Choose an Inactive port to disable the message, a TCP/IP port, a Direct Port, an eMail port, or a SafeSuiteTM keypad port.

👿 Message Ports	
🔄 🔄 Save 🗐 Edit 🔊 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Del	ete 🖹 Copy 🏟 Eind 🗐 View
Name	
New Message Port	
Port Type	Messaging Protocol
TCP/IP	Unidirectional 💌
Properties IP Address Port	

Properties

Set the port properties depending on the port type. For TCP ports set the IP address and port number. For direct ports select the comm. port and set the baud rate. eMail ports require the SMTP server, the address the message is to be sent to, the Local address and a password if required. Chapter 7 Database

🗑 Message Ports	
📕 Save 🖳 Edit 🔊 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Del	ete 🖹 Copy 🖌 🌆 Eind 🗐 View
Name	
New Message Port	
Properties Comm Port COM1 • Baud 38400 •	Messaging Protocol
⊲ ⊲ New Record	D DI

Messaging Protocol

Unidirectional is the only possibility at this time.

🖶 Message Ports		
🔄 Save 🗐 Edit ඟ Cancel 🗙 De		
Name		
New Message Port		
Port Type	Messaging Protocol	
E-mail	Unidirectional	-
,	,	_
Properties SMTP server		
Send to this address		
Local address		
Password		
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
👮 Message Ports		
♥ Message Ports		
♥ Message Ports Save ♥ Edit ♥ Cancel X De Name New Message Port		
♥ Message Ports ↓ ➡ Save ➡ Edit ♥ Cancel ↓ ★ De Name	lete 🗈 Copy 🛛 🊧 Eind 🕅 Vi	
 Message Ports Save Edit Cancel X De Name New Message Port Port Type 	lete 🛛 🗈 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🗍 🎹 Vie Messaging Protocol	
 Message Ports Save Edit Cancel X De Name New Message Port Port Type Safe Suite Keypad 	lete 🛛 🗈 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🗍 🎹 Vie Messaging Protocol	
 Message Ports Save Edit Cancel X De Name New Message Port Port Type Safe Suite Keypad 	lete 🛛 🗈 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🗍 🎹 Vie Messaging Protocol	
 Message Ports Save Edit Cancel X De Name New Message Port Port Type Safe Suite Keypad 	lete 🛛 🗈 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🗍 🎹 Vie Messaging Protocol	
 Message Ports Save Edit Cancel X De Name New Message Port Port Type Safe Suite Keypad 	lete 🛛 🗈 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🗍 🎹 Vie Messaging Protocol	
 Message Ports Save Edit Cancel X De Name New Message Port Port Type Safe Suite Keypad 	lete 🛛 🗈 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🗍 🎹 Vie Messaging Protocol	
 Message Ports Save Edit Cancel X De Name New Message Port Port Type Safe Suite Keypad 	lete 🛛 🗈 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🗍 🎹 Vie Messaging Protocol	
 Message Ports Save Edit Cancel X De Name New Message Port Port Type Safe Suite Keypad 	lete 🛛 🗈 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🗍 🎹 Vie Messaging Protocol	
 Message Ports Save Edit Cancel X De Name New Message Port Port Type Safe Suite Keypad 	lete 🛛 🗈 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🗍 🎹 Vie Messaging Protocol	
Message Ports Image: Save image Edit Cancel X Deite Name New Message Port Port Type Safe Suite Keypad Properties Image: Safe Suite Keypad	lete 🛛 🗈 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eind 🗍 🎹 Vie Messaging Protocol	

Select which SafeSuiteTM LCD keypads are to receive the message by checking the appropriate box. The pre-created messages can be no more than two lines of sixteen characters each.

🖶 Message Ports 📃 📼 💌
🔄 🔄 Save 🔤 Edit ඟ Cancel 🔀 Delete 🖻 Copy 🏙 Eind 🗐 View
Name
New Message Port
Port Type Messaging Protocol
Safe Suite Keypad 🗾 Unidirectional
Properties
□ Suite 110 ✓ Suite 111
Select All

DVR

The database selection *DVR* will call up the same connection/configuration window as the *View DVR* menu selection. (See *View DVR* on page 43 for more information.)

Guard Tour¹⁹

A Guard Tour is a set of Access Points that a cardholder or group of cardholders read their cards at (and is granted access), in a preset sequence, within a specified time frame.

Cardholders (guards) will move through a site verifying the safety and security of the site. They are expected to access certain doors at certain times during their inspection (tour). Alarms or links can be generated if they are late (or early) at any door. Tour can be started automatically from a schedule or manually.

The tour 'ends' when the guard accesses the last door. If the tour is shut down manually it is 'suspended'.

Tour Route

	lit 🗠 Cancel 🛛 🗙						
ame est Route1				_			
Verification Point	Time from Start	Grace Period	Alarm on Late	Alarm on Early	Link on Late	Link on Early	Link on Time
Main Entrance	10	2					
Employee Entrance	30	5					
Warehouse Entrance	45	3					
Shipping Entrance	60	3					

Verification Point

Click on the box and select an access point or an input point from the pull-down list. Specify points in the order they are to be reached during the Tour.

¹⁹ This selection is only available if the optional license for the Guard Tour Software has been purchased and installed.

Time from Start

Enter the amount of time (from the start time) that in should take to get to the access point. If it takes ten minutes to get to the first access point and twenty minutes to get from the first to the second access point, then enter thirty for the second access point.

Grace Period

The Grace Period is a before and after amount of leniency time applied to the *Time from Start* time. For example a five minute grace time on the second access point means that the cardholder needs to grant access between twenty-five and thirty-five minutes after the start time.

Alarm on Late

☑ Is arriving late at an access point an Alarm Event? (Yes/No)

Alarm on Early

☑ Is arriving early at an access point an Alarm Event? (Yes/No)

Link on Late

Select a link (if any) to be executed on a late arrival at the access point.

Link on Early

Select a link (if any) to be executed on an early arrival at the access point.

Link on Time

Select a link (if any) to be executed on an On Time arrival at the access point.

Guard Groups

🖹 New 📑 Save 🎐 E	idit 🕫 Cancel 🗙 Del	ete 🛛 🏘 Find 🛛 🔟 View		
ame uard Group 1				
Card Number	Last Name	First Name	Access Level	
38094	Mayes	David	Master Access	
2395	Wymann	Bill	Master Access	
] 🖉 1 of 1			\triangleright	N

Create a Guard Group and give it a name. Add guards to the group by entering their card numbers. Their first name, last name, and access level will be added from the database.

While a tour is running any guard in the guard group can grant access at the scheduled access point. Therefore multiple guards can take the tour together or different guards can take the tour at different times (depending on the schedule).

Guard Tour

ŧsAxiom¥ Guard Tours - Tours	
🖀 New 📑 Save 📑 Edit 🕫 Cancel 🗙 Delete 🕅 🏭 Find	📰 View
Name	
Guard Tour #1	
Guard Groups	
2 Guard Group 1	
Routes	
1 Test Route1	
Schedule	
2 Tour Schedule	
< < 1 of 1	D DI

Name

To create a Guard Tour give it a name and select a Guard Group, a Route, and a schedule (optional).



To have the tour run automatically enter a schedule, the tour will start whenever the schedule turns on. The schedule turning off is not used by the guard tour.



Ensure that the start time on a tour's schedule are further apart then the length of the tour. A tour will not restart if it is currently running!

Chapter 8 Reports



Note: Even just to view the Reports, the printer driver needs be installed in Windows.

The $AxiomV^{\text{TM}}$ report creation facilities allow you to customize an almost unlimited number of reports and can be used as an extremely valuable management tool.

There are two main programs. *Database Report Designer* creates reports for the Network and Device configuration. *History Report Maker* creates standard event History Reports.

Event History Reports

Starting the History Report Maker:

History Report Maker can be started from the Reports menu item or from a button on the toolbar. By default, the system has the "Access Granted Hourly Count Report" report selected. The current date, from 00:00:01 a.m. through to 23:59:59 p.m. is also set by default. A number event history report categories are available, and appear in alphabetic order in the selection list of the History Report screen.

Choose from the list to generate your report for the specific information you require. Select specific category items such as department or cardholder number to further limit your report even more. Use the *Date* and *Time* selector and the *Sorting* tab, to further define your report. Up to five fields can be sorted from the *Sorting* tab. Select from the list the field to be sorted, then select either alphabetical or reverse alphabetical. Finally, the report can be limited to particular messages through the *Messages* tab. From the *Messages* tab the report can be narrowed down to show only the required messages. Irrelevant messages won't be included making the report easier read.

General

🖶 AxiomV History Reports	
Image: Constraint of the second se	
Device Controller Report	ting Save Time 12:00:00 AM 11:59:59 PM 11:59:59 PM
	11.



Preview

Preview will display the report on the screen. The report can then be viewed before being printed or exported. Printing and exporting can be done from this screen.



Print

Print will send the report straight to the printer without being viewed.



🖷, Play History					
Date	Event	Device	Card	Card Name	Play
27/07/2005 09:41:38 AM	Access granted: operator command	RC2-104-1\Reader 1			1204
27/07/2005 09:41:38 AM	Access granted: operator command	RC2-104-1\Reader 2			100
27/07/2005 09:41:39 AM	Access granted: operator command	RC2-104-2\Reader 1			
27/07/2005 09:41:40 AM	Access granted: operator command	RC2-104-2\Reader 2			
27/07/2005 09:42:07 AM	Access granted: operator command	RC2-104-4\Reader 1			1
27/07/2005 09:42:08 AM	Access granted: operator command	RC2-104-4\Reader 2			1
27/07/2005 09:42:13 AM	Access granted: operator command	RC2-104-1\Reader 1			1
27/07/2005 09:42:16 AM	Access granted: operator command	RC2-104-3\Reader 1			10
27/07/2005 09:42:16 AM	Access granted: operator command	RC2-104-3\Reader 2			
27/07/2005 09:42:29 AM	Access granted: operator command	RC2-104-1\Reader 1			10
27/07/2005 09:43:04 AM	Access granted: operator command	RC2-104-1\Reader 1			24

🖼 DVR

Systems with DVRs will have items (inputs, outputs, access points) configured with associated cameras (and the IP address of the DVR that camera is being record by). Clicking the DVR icon in the right-hand column will send the date/time of the event in that row, and the associated camera number, to designated DVR via its IP address.

A Font

Font is used to change the font used on the report. Simply select from the list provided. A sample of the font is shown in the area to the right. (See Fonts for more information.)

Date and Time Selector

Select the *Start Date and Time* and the *End Date and Time* for the period you wish to report on, by either browsing for the required date, using the *spin* buttons to set the desired time or by keying directly into the respective date and time box.

Daily Reports

Special *Daily Report* functionality has been included to provide for reporting on a specific time period, such as 8:00:00 a.m. through 17:00:00 p.m. over a range of days such as the previous week.

Select the daily time period desired, and the Start and End dates for the desired range of days. Then check the *Daily* report option on the screen.

Messages

Preview Print DVR A A Access Granted Hourly Dourt Access Point Report Alarms Report Assets Report CardHolders Report Device Controller Report Input Report Input Report NC100 Report NC100 Report NC100 Report NC100 Report NC100 Report Network Report Output Report Time & Attendance Report Visitors activity Visitors Details General Messages Sorting Save	AxiomV History Reports			<u>_ ×</u>
Access Point Report Alarms Report Assets Report CardHolders Report Device Controller Report Guard Tour Report Input Report KeyPad / Apartment Report Main Report NC100 Report NC100 Report Network Report Output Report Network Report Output Report Time & Attendance Report Visitors Currently Checked In Visitors Details				
Guard Four Report Input Report Input Report Imput Access Granted KeyPad / Apartment Report Imput Access Denied Main Report Imput Access Denied Main Report Imput Access Point Notion Report Imput Point Network Report Imput Point Output Report Imput Point Output Report Imput restore Visitors activity Imput: illegal Visitors Details Imput: alarm Visitors Details Imput: alarm Visitors Details Imput: illegal Visitors Details Imput anmed	Access Point Report Alarms Report Assets Report CardHolders Report Device Controller Report	The list contains mes Events with only sele	sages that you can select for this report. \mathbb{R}^{n}	
Output Report Time & Attendance Report Visitors activity Visitors Currently Checked In Visitors Details Input: illegal Input: normal Input: abnormal Input armed Input disarmed	Input Report KeyPad / Apartment Report Main Report NC100 Report Network Report Operator Report	Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access	Denied der Action Point Point Status	
Input armed	Time & Attendance Report Visitors activity Visitors Currently Checked In	Inpu	it: restore it: alarm it: trouble it: illegal	
		Inpu ⊡ ⊡ Output F	it armed it disarmed	-

As well as selecting the category and date/time parameters for your report, it can be further defined by messages. Click on the check boxes to select/deselect messages. Only events with the checked messages will appear in the report.

Sorting

E AxiomV History Reports		
Image: Constraint of the second sec	A MA Font Find	
Access Granted Hourly Count Access Point Report Alarms Report Assets Report CardHolders Report Device Controller Report Guard Tour Report Input Report KeyPad / Apartment Report Main Report NC100 Report NC100 Report Operator Report Output Report Time & Attendance Report Visitors activity Visitors Details	General Messages Sorting Save You can sort records by up to five fields, in either ascending or descending order 1 Date 2 1 Date Image: Sorting in either ascending or either in either ascending or either asc	

The *Sorting* tab provides the ability to customize the report by sorting chosen fields (either ascending or descending). Up to five fields sorts can be done for each report. The report is first sorted by sort 1 and then (if programmed) by sorts 2-5 (in order).

Save²⁰

Image: Preview Image: Print <	E AxiomV History Reports		
Access Point Report Alarms Report Assets Report CardHolders Report Device Controller Report Guard Tour Report Input Report KeyPad / Apartment Report Main Report NC100 Report			
Operator Report Output Report Time & Attendance Report	Access Point Report Alarms Report Assets Report CardHolders Report Device Controller Report Guard Tour Report Input Report KeyPad / Apartment Report Main Report NC100 Report Nct00 Report Network Report Operator Report Output Report Time & Attendance Report	You can save the selected criteria and use that to get the report based on that in future. Report Title Period Schedule	
Visitors activity Visitors Currently Checked In Visitors Details	Visitors Currently Checked In Visitors Details	C Monthly Report	

Under the *Save* tab you can set up reports to run automatically. To accomplish this, the optional module 'Report Scheduler' is required.

When a report is designed and saved all of the criteria (or data) to create that report is saved (the report itself is not saved). Reports will then run and <u>print</u> according to the schedule created for the report, unless the Report Server is off. If the Report Server is off at the time of a schedule print it of course will not print at that time nor will it print when the server is turned on. It will print at the next scheduled time according to the saved design criteria for the report. For example, if an Every 12 hour report is created to start on 1 January 2007 at 8:30 a.m., it will print at that time then at 8:30 p.m. 1January 2007, then 8:30 a.m. 2January 2007, etc. Now if the server is turned off from 6:00 a.m. 5 January 2007 or at 12:45 p.m. 5 January 2007. The next report will be printed at 8:30 p.m. 5 January 2007.

²⁰ This selection is only available if the optional license for the History Report Scheduler Software has been purchased and installed.

Reports cannot be printed for periods that are not completely in the past. Therefore reports that are scheduled to print at a time within the parameters of the period will print a report for the previous period. This means that if a report is scheduled for 4:00 p.m. to cover the time from 8:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m., then the report will be print for the previous day and not the current day. A report that covers from, day 1 to, day '*Last*' always prints the previous month.

The AxiomVTM Report Server is an independent AxiomVTM system that allows the user to design and schedule history reports.

AxiomReportServer Properties (Local Computer)	? ×
General Log On Recovery Dependencies	
Log on as:	
C Local System account	
Allow service to interact with desktop	
Ihis account	<u>B</u> rowse
Password:	
Confirm password:	-
You can enable or disable this service for the hardware Hardware Profile	profiles listed below:
Profile 1	Enabled
Enable	<u>D</u> isable
OK Can	cel <u>Apply</u>



Be sure to change the Log On property for 'Axiom Report Server' from *Local System account* to a local user account.

To create an automatic report select the type of report to run, what period the report is to cover, and then what schedule it is to run on.



Select New to set up an automatic report.



Delete will remove the highlighted report from the list.



The *Schedule* button will call up the schedule tab.

Save will save the schedule created using the name typed in the white box labeled 'Save as'.

Period

Period Schedule Email		
 Hourly Report Daily Report Weekly Report Monthly Report 	Last <u>6</u> Hours	

Hourly

This period will cover the last x hours prior to the report being printed. The maximum time it can be set to is 99 hours (or four days and three hours).

Period Schedule Email			
 Hourly Report Daily Report Weekly Report Monthly Report 	Start End	12:00:00 AM	2

Daily

This period will cover the specified portion of the day from Start time to End time.

Period Schedule Email	
C Daily Report	12:00:00 AM 🚦 🔀

Weekly

This period can cover one or more weeks. It covers days of the week from the Start (day and time) until the End (day and time). The End can be in the current week or a succeeding week.

Period Schedule Email			
 Hourly Report Daily Report Weekly Report Monthly Report 	Start End	1 12:00:00 AM	

Monthly

This period can cover up to one month. It covers the dates of the month from the Start (date and time) until the End (date and time). The End date can be a lower value then the Start date in order to span two months.

Schedule

Period Schedule	Email
 Every Daily Monthly Weekly 	6 Hrs Starting at 04/05/2009 ▼ 3:00:00 AM -

Every

This schedule will print the report periodically at the set interval. The example above will print a report every six hours (four times a day). This interval cannot be set to more than 999 hours (or forty-one days and fifteen hours).

Period Schedule	Email
C Every C Daily C Monthly C Weekly	Start at 4 :00:00 AM
	j

Daily

This schedule set which days of the week and at what time on those days that the report will be printed.

Period Schedule	Email	
C Every	C Day	1 of month
 Monthly 	The	1st Mon of month
C Weekly	Time	8 :00:00 AM

Monthly

This schedule can set up the report to print on a specific date of the month, including the Last day, or a specific day of the month like the 2^{nd} Tuesday. Select a time on that date for the report to print.

Weekly

This schedule will print the report periodically with a weekly interval. The interval could be every week, every other week, or more. Set the day of the, the time, and a date to start on.

Period Schedule Email
🗖 Email Report
Email Report to

Check the box and enter the eMail address that the periodic or scheduled report is to be sent to.

eMail

Fonts

븆 Font	×
Font : Times New Roman	
MS Sans Serif Sample MS Serif MT Extra Palatino Linotype Roman Script AaBb123	
Small Fonts Symbol System Tahoma Terminal Times New Roman	
OK Cancel	

Fonts can be selected from either *Database Reports* or *Event History Reports* and applies to both. The selected font will be retained and applied to <u>all</u> reports, on a computer, until changed by the user. Therefore each different client machine will have its own selected font.

Database Reports

Starting Database Report Designer

Database Report Designer can be started from the Reports menu item or from a button on the toolbar.

General

🜐 AxiomV Database Reports		<u>- 0 ×</u>
	nt Refresh Delete Find	
Access Level Report Access Point Group Report Access Point Report Access Point Report Simple Apartments Report Area Muster Report Area Report Assets Report CardHolder High Security Read CardHolder Link Report CardHolder Lock Unlock Reade CardHolder Non-active Report CardHolder Readers Report CardHolder Report Simple Company Report Device Controller Report Simple Elevators Groups Report Elevators Report	General Sorting ID Description 1 Master Access Level	

Select from the list on the left the category (type of report) that will be the subject of the report. Then select from the list on the right the items that are to be included in the report. For example, for a cardholder report select from a list of cardholders, for an access point report select from a list of doors. Use **Click+drag**, **Shift+click** or **Ctrl+click** to select multiple items. Checking *Select All* will include all items in the report.
Sorting

🜐 AxiomV Database Reports						
🖪 🕒 🖉	A 🖸		ê ù			
Preview Designer Print Fo	ont Refresh	Delete F	Find			
Access Level Report	<u>G</u> eneral S <u>o</u> r	rting				
Access Point Report Access Point Report Simple Apartments Report	You can : descendir		ay up to five fields,	in either ascen	ding or	
Area Muster Report Area Report Assets Report CardHolder High Security Read	1			•	Ź↓	
CardHolder Link Report CardHolder Lock Unlock Reade	2			7	≜↓	
CardHolder Non-active Report CardHolder Readers Report CardHolder Report	3			7	≜↓	
CardHolder Report Simple Company Report Device Controller Report	4			Ţ	₹↓	
Device Controller Report Simple Elevators Groups Report Elevators Report	5			7	≜↓	
						1.

The *Sorting* tab provides the ability to customize the report by sorting chosen fields (either ascending or descending). Up to five fields sorts can be done for each report. The report is first sorted by sort 1 and then (if programmed) by sorts 2-5 consecutively.

Preview Report

Preview Report will display the report on the screen. The report can then be viewed before being printed or exported. Printing and exporting can be done from this screen.

Report Designer

Report Designer will start the Custom Report Designer for the highlighted report. See below for details including an example of the creation of a custom Muster Report.



Ξ,

ð

Print Report

Print Report will send the report straight to the printer without being viewed.

A Font

Font is used to change the font used on the report. Simply select from the list provided. A sample of the font is shown in the area to the right. (See Fonts for more information.)



Refresh the Report List

Refresh will recompile the report list to include any newly created reports.



Delete

Delete is used to remove custom created report that is no longer required.

Readers

Dreview	Designer	i 🗐 Print	Α	(× #	N #1	
Preview	Designer	Print	E	_				
			Font	Refres	h De	lete Fin	id Find Read	der
Access Level F Access Point G	•	-	<u>G</u> eneral S	orting <u>R</u> e	aders			
Access Point & Access Point R Apartments Rej CardHolder Hig CardHolder Loc CardHolder Rej CardHolder Rej CardHolder Sim Company Repo Device Control Elevators Group Elevators Report Holiday Report Input Group Rej	eport port k Security Rea k Report k Unlock Rea aders Report port uple Report ort er Report s Report rt Report		Description	IReaders	Туре	Device	NC100	Network
Input Report Interlock Group		-						

Some reports have a third tab (Readers) to further define the report. In the above example, under the general tab the cardholders are selected. Under the reader tab the access points are chosen. The resulting report will show which of the chosen readers the selected cardholder have access to.

Custom Report Designer

This document will demonstrate how create a custom designed report. It will do this by example by creating a 'Custom Muster Report'. Any report can be customized but only by using the existing fields provided in the original report. The exception to this is the Cardholder Report that allows the addition of Custom Fields.

We want to create a custom muster report that includes fields that are not on the original report. To do this a custom report file needs to be created by RBH so that the required fields are added to the database fields' list. For our example we want to include First Name, Last Name, and a custom field. Before starting to create the report, ensure that any custom fields that are required are available. For our example we created a custom field 'Employee Type'.

🖼 Cardholders Design	
🛛 🔚 Save 🔊 Cancel 🛛 🎦 Tab 🏾 🐮 Text 🛛 123 Number 🔥 Label 🎆 Date 🛃 Tim	ie 📑 Combo
Card Number Last Name First Name	Initials
General Personal Options CodeLinks Groups Photo new	
Properties	×
Field Name	
EmployeeType	-
Position	
Top Left Height Width	1
505 500 315 2025	
	ncel

Chapter 8 Reports

Custom Database Fields

Select the desired report (our example is a custom *Area Muster Report*) and click *Designer* to start the *Report Designer* utility.

🛱 Axiom¥ Database Reports 📃 🗖 🗅				
Image: Preview Image: Designer Print Font	🚯 🔀 🚧 Refresh Delete Find			
Access Level Report Designer Access Point Group Report Access Point Report Access Point Report Apartments Report Area Muster Report Area Report Area Report CardHolder High Security Read CardHolder Link Report CardHolder Lock Unlock Reads CardHolder Report CardHolder Report CardHolder Simple Report CardHolder Simple Report CustomAreaInput CustomAreaInput3 Device Controller Report Elsuitate Sicura Report	igeneral Sorting ID Description 1 Area 1 2 Area 2 3 Area 3 4 Area 4 ✓ Select All			
		/_		

To create the desired report the Database fields need to be changed. Right click on Database Fields and select Set Location. The new file provided by RBH is 'CustomAreafield.ttx'. Set this file as the new location.

🔅 Axiom¥ Report	Designer	
Main Report	2 / 礡 📍 🔛 🛛 🔽 🔰 🗵	(8 ⊕ ∰ ∽ ∽ B I ∐ E E E
⊕• 😫 Database Fiel ⊕• 🎦 Formula Fields	Database Fields	
Parameter Fie	VISUAL LIDKIDO EXDERC	
 ∑ Running Total ⊕ ¥ Special Fields 	Add Database to Report Remove Database from Report	List of Cards in Are
🗄 🚍 Unbound Field	Set Location Set Alias	
	Verify Database	2
	Log On/Off Server	Card Details
	Convert Database Driver	reaName - A (Section1)
	Help 🕨	wearkame • A (Section 1)
	Cancel Menu	and blows have a constant laws
	croup #1 Name ي ل Group Footer #1: AreaInputs_ttx.A	ardNumber @CardName reaName - A (Section2)
	Report Footer (Section9)	
	Page Footer (Section7)	PageNumber

Set Location	×
Databases:	1
AreaInputs_ttx	Set Location
	Same As Report
	Convert To <u>U</u> NC
	Do <u>n</u> e
Location:	
Table: AreaInputs.ttx	
Server Type: Active Data (Field Defi	nitions Only)
Server Name: D:\Development\Axior	mrpt\ReportDesignE
Database:	
User ID:	

Click on the *Set Location* button to explore the Data folders in order to select the custom fields Database.

💾 Data Explorer	×
Current Connections Graverites Graverites Graverites Graverites Graverites Graverites Graverites Graverites	Set
More Data Sources	Add to <u>F</u> avorites
	<u>D</u> elete Favorite
Data Explorer	
Browse through the items above until you find the table you wish to use. Once found, double click on the table or select it and	<u>O</u> ptions
press the Set button.	Close

Select the path '*More Data Sources / Active Data / Active Data (Field Definitions Only)*' to select the *Data Source*.

🖀 Data Explorer	X
	Set
Content Connections Favorites	
+ Database Files	
A more Data Sources	Add to Environment
Active Data	Add to Eavorites
Active Data (ADO)	Delete Favorite
🕀 🧰 Active Data (DAO)	
🗄 🔲 Active Data (Field Definitions	Only
🗄 🧰 Active Data (RDO)	
🗐 🗐 Exchange Folders/Address Book	•
Data Explorer	
Browse through the items above until you fi	nd theOptions
table you wish to use.	
 Once found, double click on the table or se press the Set button. 	lect it and
press the bet buttori.	Close

Select Data Source	
C <u>O</u> DBC (ADO)	
V	Ne <u>w</u>
	Ad <u>v</u> anced
C ADO and OLE DB Connection String:	
	B <u>u</u> ild
C <u>D</u> AO	
	Browse
Database Access 💌	
Data Definition	
	B <u>r</u> owse
	Ne <u>w</u>
OK	Cancel

Select Data Defin	ition File		? ×
Look jn:	🔁 Reports 💌	← 🗈 💣 🎟-	
History Desktop My Documents My Computer My Network P	 History Desktop My Documents My Computer 3½ Floppy (A:) Local Disk (C:) Program Files rbh AxiomV Data Reports Local Disk (D:) Compact Disc (E:) My Network Places Software Testing 		<u>O</u> pen
	Files of <u>type:</u> Tab Separated Text	•	Cancel

Select Browse and locate the Reports folder.

Browse the path to the provided custom file (CustomAreafiled.ttx in this example).

Select Data Defi	inition File	<u>? ×</u>
Look jn:	: 🔁 Reports 💽 🗲 🖻 📸	:::: •
History History Desktop My Documents My Computer	CustomAreafield.ttx	
My Network P	File name: CustomAreafield Files of type: Tab Separated Text	<u>O</u> pen Cancel

After selecting the new location file click Open.

💾 Data Explorer	×
ODBC Oddate Files Oddate Files	Set Add to Eavorites Delete Favorite
Data Explorer Browse through the items above until you find the table you wish to use. Once found, double click on the table or select it and press the Set button.	Options Close

Press Set to select the file.

Select Data Source	
O <u>D</u> DBC (ADO)	
_	Ne <u>w</u>
	Ad <u>v</u> anced
C ADO and OLE DB Connection String:	
	B <u>u</u> ild
o <u>D</u> ao	
	Browse
Database Access 💌	
• Data Definition	
C:\Program Files\rbh\AxiomV\Data\Rep	Browse
	Ne <u>w</u>
ОК	Cancel



Set Location	×
Databases:	
AreaInputs_ttx	Set Location
	Same <u>A</u> s Report
	Convert To <u>U</u> NC
	Do <u>n</u> e
- Location:	
Table: CustomAreafield.ttx	
Server Type: Active Data (Field Defin	itions Only)
Server Name: C:\Program	
Database: User ID:	

Press *Done* to complete the location selection.



You will get a verification of the change to the database fields. Press OK.

You can now see the custom fields (like Employee Type) in the field list on the left side of report.

🔅 Axiom¥ Report Designer		_ 🗆 🗵
] 🔚 🔗 🏷 😂 🤴 🤊	· ₽ 100% ▼ Σ (Ξ ⊕ ∰ ∽ ∝ Β Ι	u E E E
Main Report		
🖃 🥃 Database Fields		4
AreaInputs_ttx	Report Header (Section8)	
Cardnumber		
AreaTime	List	of Cards 📃
- fIPID		
	- •	
	·	
Department	Page Header (Section6)	
EmployeeType 	List of Cards in Area	
	- Area Card Details	
	Group Header #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section1.)	
	Details (Section10)	
	. Group #1 Name] Cardnumber] @CardName	
	Group Footer #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section2.)	
	Report Footer (Section9)	
	Page Footer (Section7)	
	· [PageNumber 🖵

Customize Report²¹

Now you can customize the report. Add and delete fields, edit text and formatting, and format formulas.

Remove Area, Card Details, and Entry Time from Section6, and remove @CardName and Area Time from Section10.

🔅 Axiom¥ Report Designer	
🔚 🔗 🎾 🍪 🥫 📍	100% ▼ ∑ (= ⊕ ∰ ∽ ◇ B I ∐ = = =
Main Report	
🖃 🤤 Database Fields	
AreaInputs_ttx	Report Header (Section8)
AreaName AreaTime FIPID LastName FirstName	List of Cards
Department	Page Header (Section6)
EmployeeType	List of Cards in Area Group Header #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section1) Details (Section10)
	. Group #1 Name] [Cardnumber]
	Group Footer #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section2.)
	Report Footer (Section9)
	Page Footer (Section7)
	: [PageNumber

²¹ This selection is only available if the optional license for the Customize Report Software has been purchased and installed.

From the Database Fields List drag and drop First Name, Last Name, and Department into Section10. This will also create a header each one in Section6. Resize each entry for best fit in the area.

抉 Axiom¥ Report Designer		<u>- 0 ×</u>
🔚 🔗 🐎 🍪 礡 🕇 Main Report		n E E H
🖃 🛢 Database Fields		· · · · · 4 · ·
AreaInputs_ttx	Report Header (Section8)	
AreaName AreaTime FIPID FirstName	List	t of Cards
	Page Header (Section6)	
EmployeeType Formula Fields Parameter Fields	List of Cards in Area	
E Group Name Fields ∑ Running Total Fields	LastName	FirstName
E Special Fields	Group Header #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section1.)	
⊕ Unbound Fields	Details (Section10.)	
	_ Group #1 Name] CardnumberLastName	FirstName
	Group Footer #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section2.)	
	Report Footer (Section9)	
	Page Footer (Section7)	
		PageNumber 👻
		•

In Section6 and Section8 right click on the text fields 'List of Card in Area' and change them to 'Muster Report'. Add the header 'Card Number' in Section6 by inserting a text object and editing it.



🔅 Axiom¥ Report Designer	·	
🔚 🔗 🎾 😂 🤴 🕯	? 🛃 100% 💌 Σ 📾 📾 🛍 ∽ ∾ В Ι Ц Ξ Ξ	
Main Report		
🖃 🛢 Database Fields		
🖻 🛄 AreaInputs_ttx	Report Header (Section8)	- • I
Cardnumber		
	Muster R	le
	. ·	
- 😇 LastName	-	
- 🔤 FirstName		
- 😎 Department	Page Header (Section6)	
EmployeeType	Muster Report	
🕀 🖻 Group Name Fields	Card Number LastName FirstName	
Running Total Fields	Group Header #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section1.)	
	Details (Section10)	
	. Group #1 Name] CardnumberLastName FirstName	
	Group Footer #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section2)	
	Report Footer (Section9)	
	Page Footer (Section7)	
	PageNumbe	er ▼

A Section Header trim is added (yellow for the muster area and red for other areas) by right clicking on the Section1 bar and selecting *Format Section*.

抉 Axiom¥ Report Designer	
]Σ(B ⊕ ∭] v v B I ∐ Ξ Ξ Ξ
AreaInputs_ttx Gardnumber AreaName AreaTime Giroup LastName Department Department Page Header (S Muster Re Muster Re Group Name Fields Special Fields Special Fields Jobund Fields Jobund Fields Group Header # Gr	Section6) sport Card Number LastName FirstName Card Number LastName Section 1 up Header #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section 1) up Header #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section 1) a (Drill-Down OK) press (No Drill-Down) Section section Below set Group nge Group mat Section
Can	cel Menu

Section Expert	×		
Sections: Insert Delete Merge ↓ Report Header Page Header Page Header Page Header Page Forter Group Header #1: Arealnputs_ttx.AreaName - A Details Group Footer #1: Arealnputs_ttx.AreaName - A Page Footer Report Footer Report Footer Header Header Header Image Footer Header Header Header Header Image Footer Header Header Header Header Report Footer Header Header Header Header Image Footer Header Header Header Header Header Image Footer Header Header Header Header Header Header Header Header Image Header Header Header Heade	Common Color Color Background Color Silver		
OK Cancel			

Select the *Colour* tab and press the X+2 button.



RBH Access Technologies Inc.

The script above will provide yellow trim for Area 1 and red for all others. Ensure that *Crystal Syntax* is selected. Save and Exit.

After setting up the trim hide the area names by selecting *Suppress* for the 'Group #1 Name' field. Select the field and right click. Click *Format*.

👙 Axiom¥ Report Designer			
🔚 🔗 🐎 🎨 🚚 📍 Main Report	? 🔛 100% 💌 🗍 🕽	E (= ษ 🛍 🗍 🕫 🌣 🖪	IŪĒĒĒ
1	Report Header (Section	() () () () () () () () () ()	
	Report Footer (Sections Page Footer (Section7	Format Select Expert Order • Cut Cut Copy Delete Help • Cancel Menu	PageNumber ▼ ▶

Check Suppress then click OK.

Format Editor	×
Common Border Font Paragraph Formatting Hyperlink	(
	<u>×-2</u>
Horizontal Alignment: Default	<u>×2</u>
Keep Object Together	×·2
Close Border on Page Break	<u>×2</u>
🗖 <u>C</u> an Grow	×-2
Maximum number of lines: (Enter 0 for no limit)	-
Tool Tip Text	<u>×2</u>
Text <u>R</u> otation: 0 v degrees	
Suppress If Duplicated	**
Sample: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX]
ОК	Cancel

Create an *Employee Type* group. First drag and drop *Employee Type* into Section10 and edit it and its header for best fit, then click on the *Insert Group* button (\boxdot).

抉 Axiom¥ Report Designer	r 📃	
] 🔚 🔗 🎾 😋 / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	? ▶ 100% ▼ Σ 🔚 🖦 🛍 । • > > Β Ι ∐ Ξ Ξ	
🖃 🛢 Database Fields		<u>,</u>
AreaInputs_ttx	Report Header (Section8)	
AreaName AreaTime FIPID LastName FirstName	Muster	Re
😁 Department	Page Header (Section6)	
EmployeeType	Muster Report	
🕀 🖻 Group Name Fields	EmployeeType Card Number LastName FirstName	<u>1</u>
E Running Total Fields ⊕	Group Header #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section1.)	
⊡ ⊡ Unbound Fields	Details (Section10)	
	[EmployéeTypee] CardnumberLastName FirstName	1
	Group Footer #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section2.)	
	Report Footer (Section9)	
	Page Footer (Section7)	
	PageNum	iber 🗸

From the pull-down select *AreaInputs_ttx.Employee Type*.

Insert Group	×
Common	
When the report is printed, the records will be sorted and grouped by:	
📼 AreaInputs_ttx.EmployeeType	
in ascending order.	
The section will be printed on any change	
of AreaInputs_ttx.EmployeeType	
└── Group Options	
Customize Group Name Field	
Choose From Existing Field	
AreaInputs_ttx.Cardnumber 👻	
C Use a Formula as Group Name 🗙 2	
□ Keep Group Together	
Repeat Group Header On Each Page	
OKCa	ncel

Click *OK* to create the group.

A total count of the cardholders in each area is added by clicking on the Σ (*Summary*) button. From the pull-downs select *Count* of *AreaInputs_ttx.Employee Type* and *Group* #2: *AreaInputs_ttx.Employee Type*. This will provide a total count for each Employee Type. Type.

Insert Summary	×
Common	
Insert a field which calculates the	
count	
of AreaInputs_ttx.EmployeeType 💌	
When the report is printed, the records will be sorted and grouped by:	
Show as a percentage of	
Insert summary fields for all groups	
Insert grand total field	
🗖 Sym across hierarchy	
OK Can	icel

When you exit, save the report in the *Reports* folder of AxiomVTM, then press *Refresh* in *Main Database Report Screen*. You'll see the report you just created.

븆 Axiom¥ Report Designer		
] T≣ <i>S</i> S 🏞 🏤 // / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	🔛 100% ▼ Σ 🕾 📾 🛍 ∽ ∾ В 🔅	7 ⊻ ≣ ≣ ≣
🖃 🛢 Database Fields		4
AreaInputs_ttx	Report Header (Section8)	
AreaName AreaTime FIPID LastName FirstName	· r · · · · ·	Muster Re
	Page Header (Section6)	
EmployeeType	Muster Report	
🕀 🖻 Group Name Fields		FirstName
 	Group Header #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section1)	
E ⊊ Special ricids 	. Group Header #2: AreaInputs_ttx.EmployeeType - A (Section3.)	
	[Group #2 Name	
	Details (Section10) GroupEmployeeType CardnumberLastName	FirstName
	GroupEmployeeType CardnumberLastName Group Footer #2: AreaInputs_ttx.EmployeeType - A (Section 4)	Firstivame
	nputs_ttx.EmployeeType	
	Group Footer #1: AreaInputs_ttx.AreaName - A (Section2.)	
	Report Footer (Section9)	
	Page Footer (Section7)	
	. r . ·	PageNumber

You can dress up the report by adding a text object [Total =] in Section4 as well as adjusting the position and size of any/all object to best display the report. Fonts can be changed, and underlines added, or bolded and/or italics.

Chapter 8 Reports

Printer Setup

All new reports are configured without a printer selected. Right click on the report and select *Designer / Printer Setup* to set up a printer for your new report.



No P <u>r</u> int Printer			
<u>N</u> ame:	\\TESTINGSERVER\Dell Laser Print	er 11(💌 📃	Properties
	Default Properties		
Status:	Ready		
Туре:	Dell Laser Printer 1100		
Where:	USB001		
Comment			
Paper		_ Orientation -	
Size:	Letter		Portrait
-		A	
Source:	Auto Select		C L <u>a</u> ndscape
Network	1	ОК	Cancel

Uncheck the *No Printer* box and configure the printer settings that apply to this report on your system.

Chapter 8 Reports

Sample Report

Here is a sample of the report we created.

kiom¥ Rep : 🛃 🏖 view		• 4	1	of 1 🕨	 #
			I	Muster Re	port
Muster	Report	Card Number	LastName	FirstName	Department
Emp loyees					<u> </u>
Ling Dyces		135 234 1345	May Damon Snyman	Esbe Victor Johan	CIC SHEQ CCS
Visitors	Total= 3 Total= 1	1234	Manuel	Trevor	SARS
Team Mem Visitors	bers Total= 1	1236	Bowers	Freddie	New Ventures
Y IS ILO F S	Total= 1	1876	Van der Merwe	Jan	SAPS
Visitors		1256	De lile	Patricia	Telkom
	Total= 1				

Part 6

Appendix A

A new feature has been added to the AxiomVTM system making it possible to control the movement of assets through AxiomVTM access points. Assets will have an embedded credential readable at a distance. The position of the reader will be at a point where it will generate a signal prior to the exit point but not at the exit point. The asset reader will be connected in parallel with the access reader.

Asset Tracking²²

An access point will be defined as an asset tracking point in order to turn on this feature. An asset will be defined in the database and will contain the asset's owner. The owner will be a cardholder defined in the database.

When an asset is detected the access point will be locked for the "Asset Present Time" and the buzzer will beep three beeps per second. This is known as Asset Mode. A log message will be sent indicating the presence of the asset. If the timer times out another message will be generated indicating that the asset was not able to exit the access point. During the time period only the cardholder assigned to the asset (the owner) may exit the access point.

Operation Scenarios

Asset Tracking Normal Operation

- 1. The asset is detected followed by "Cardholder action: Asset at door: message.
- 2. The exit access point is placed into Asset Mode with the reader beeping triplets.
- 3. The asset's owner is granted access "Access granted: Reader" with the owner's ID.
- 4. The asset is also granted access "Access granted: with asset" with the asset's ID.
- 5. When the access point is closed or the unlock times out the access point will be 'Locked' (even if it was previously unlocked or scheduled to be unlocked).

Asset Timeout

- 1. The asset is detected followed by "Cardholder action: Asset at door: message.
- 2. The exit access point is placed into Asset Mode with the reader beeping triplets.
- 3. The asset owner fails to swipe within the Asset Present Time.
- 4. An alarm message "Access denied: Asset Timeout" is sent.
- 5. The access point is placed into High Security Mode "Cardholder action: high security ON.
- 6. Only a supervisor or cardholder with high security privilege may be granted access after this time until the access point's High Security Mode is turned off.

²² This selection is only available if the optional license for the Asset Tracking Software has been purchased and installed.

Functionality

Asset Detected at Non-Asset tracking Point

At Least One 'Asset Door²³' Defined on the NC100

If a reader that is not defined as an 'Asset Door¹⁷' detects an asset it will display the message "Cardholder action: Asset at Door", but no further action will be taken.

No 'Asset Doors¹⁹' Defined on NC100

If an asset is detected an access denied message will be logged, and no further action will be taken.

Using PIN Code

If you are using card + PIN schedule, the asset will trigger the *Asset Mode* and the user will have to enter a PIN code after swiping as usual. If PIN codes are allowed to be used instead of credentials by having card + PIN schedule off, the user will be found based upon the entered PIN.

Two Person Mode and Escort Required

Two Person Mode and *Escort Required Mode* are the only modes not allowed on an Asset Access point. All other modes are permitted.

Access Denied During Asset Mode

If access is denied while in Asset Mode the "Access Denied" message will be displayed and the beeper will continue. The timer will be reset to the Asset Timeout time after every wrong attempt is made. Even if the credential matches the Asset's owner, the cardholder must be granted access in order to proceed.

²³ An "Asset Door" is an Access Point of type *Asset Door* or of type *Asset Reporting*. These selections are only available if the optional license for the Asset Tracking Software has been purchased and installed.

Programming

Asset²⁴

An Assets window is used for managing assets. Assets are saved as cardholders except that the card type will be Asset. The asset will not have an access level. It will be downloaded to panels, which have reader type "Asset Door" or "Asset Reporting".

E Assets							X
	📑 Edit	Apply	⊮⊃ Cancel	X <u>D</u> elete	🏟 Eind	🔲 View	
Asset ID	Assel	: Descrip	otion		Departme	ent	
							V
Asset Ho	older	Last Na	ame		First Nam	e	
Photo	Company						
	Asset (picture			Asset ho	older picture	,
			_				
]				
			7				
Asset Pic	cture 1			Asset Pic	ture 2		
			Show				Show
) of 0						D DI

The Asset window has quick search on 'Asset ID', 'Asset Description', 'Asset Holder ID', 'Last Name', and 'First Name' of Asset Holder.

²⁴ This selection is only available if the optional license for the Asset Tracking Software has been purchased and installed.

To input the owner select *Find* and search the database for the appropriate card to be the owner of the asset. The first name and last name (of the cardholder) associated with the card will be entered by the system. Company and Notes may also be added to the asset. By default the asset is assigned the same companies as its owner.

Access Point

Select the reader type as either 'Asset Door' or 'Asset Reporting' in the access point properties screen. This reader will work as a normal reader except when it detects an asset. When an asset is detected the access point will be placed into asset mode for the predefined "Asset Tracking Time".

Appendix B

The *Active Directory* option can be added to make it quicker and easier to logon to the AxiomVTM system. Domain users can be added to the operator's list so that their WindowsTM authentication can be used to logon to the AxiomVTM system.

Active Directory

Insure that the *Active Directory* software has been installed and the license has been registered.

Setup

Only WindowsTM users and the default 'rbh' user can logon to the AxiomVTM system. Since the current WindowsTM user has not yet been added to the operator list you will have to login with the default 'rbh' user. If there are any other operators existing before the *Active Directory* option is added, these users can only be deleted. The AxiomVTM system will not allow them to be used to logon.

AxiomV Enterprise Security System	×
Active Directory failed to authenticate user Administrator You may logon as master user at this time.	
OK	

AxiomV Sign In				
Axio	m <u>V</u>	Enterpris	e Eo	dition
Login ID	rbh			
Password	*****			
Data Server	(Local)			•
		Ok		Cancel

After you have logged-in go to Database\Operators to add a new operator.

🜐 AxiomV Enterprise Sec	urity System	
<u>File View</u> System <u>Status</u>	Database Tools Reports Help	
) 🎕 🤰 🎄 😵 🕺 鬥		ð 🖪 🏭
System Status	2 Operators	

Selecting **NEW** will bring up a list of Windows[™] users to be selected from.

UserID	Username	 	 	 -
Tester_1	Tester_1			
_ Tester_2	Tester_2			
Tester_3	Tester_3			
Tester_4	Tester_4			
testing	testing			

Login ID and Password are disabled in the AxiomVTM system since these are being taken from Window'sTM users. The Log Off and Log In buttons have been removed because they are not required.

The *Active Directory* option will also disable the keyboard time feature so the system won't logout itself, the user must logout.

🔋 Operators	
New 📴 Edit 🕫 Cancel 🛛 🗙 Delete 🛛 📴 Copy 🛛 🏘 Eir	nd 🔟 View
Name Login ID	
Tester_1 Tester_1	
Password	
Operator Security Profile 1	
Language English	•
	D DI

If *Active Directory* is not available for any reason, the AxiomVTM will only allow the default 'rbh' user to logon.

Glossary

Many of the words or terms in this guide have more common definitions than used in industry. In this guide, we've used them specifically in the context of security access control. For this reason, the following glossary of terms defines these terms as used in this guide. Words that appear in Italics are also defined in this glossary.

.wav File	.wav is a standard audio file format that AxiomV TM can attach to particular events thereby providing unique audio annunciation of events to operators.
Access Code	Numeric data entered into a keypad to verify authorized entry into a controlled area.
Access Control	A method by which you control and/or monitor entry of persons, vehicles or objects into and out of physical locations.
Access Point	A point of entry or exit, for an <i>area</i> whose access is controlled and monitored by $AxiomV^{TM}$. (E.g. a door or parking gate.)
Alphanumeric	All characters A through Z and 0 through 9 that may be used to form an Access Code.
Antipassback (APB)	An Access Control feature designed to prevent improper usage of a valid card. AxiomV TM provides three types of Antipassback control: Reader Antipassback, Timed Antipassback, and Area Antipassback.
Antipassback (Reader)	Reader Antipassback prevents users from sharing their card with another user and allowing them to gain access to controlled area that they are not authorized to enter. Reader Antipassback works by comparing the area the cardholder is reading into against the last APB area read into by the cardholder. If they match, then a Reader Antipassback violation has occurred.
Antipassback (Area)	Area Antipassback is even more restrictive than Reader Antipassback, and prevents users from moving through a building without reading as they go. Exit Area Antipassback works by comparing the area the cardholder is reading out of against the last area read into by the cardholder. If they do not match, then an Exit Area Antipassback violation has occurred.

Antipassback Timed Antipassback prevents a cardholder from reading at the same reader more than once within a predefined period of time.

Antipassback (Global) Antipassback tracked across multiple NC100s is called Global Antipassback. Global Antipassback must be enabled when the number of adjacent areas to be defined requires more than 8 readers.

- **ASCII** An acronym for the American Standard Code for Information Interchange. It is a code in which the numbers from 0 to 255 represent letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and other characters. ASCII Code is standardized top facilitate transmitting text between computers or between a computer and a peripheral device.
- **Area** A predefined physical location with borders and *Access Points* controlled and monitored by AxiomVTM.
- **Baud Rate** The speed at which data is sent through a communications cable. The baud rate is measured in bits per second (bps).
 - **Bit** The abbreviation for binary digit (0 or 1) in the binary number system.
- **Card Reader** A device that scans or reads encoded information contained on an Access Card.
 - **Client** The client application software in an AxiomVTM system. In a stand-alone installation, both the client and server applications are run on the Host PC.
 - **C-Net** The abbreviation for Controller Network in an AxiomV[™] system. The C-Net is a high-speed fault tolerant ring network that connects up to 15 NC100 controllers. Each C-Net is connected to a single communication port on the host PC via the Master Controller.

Database Segregation The separation of an AxiomVTM system into two or more logical sites. Each site carries its own database security and configuration parameters.

Device Any apparatus that monitors or controls an input or output point.
Device Controllers	Controllers to which all input and output devices are connected in an AxiomV [™] system. RC2's and IOC16's are both device controllers.
Display Language	The language in which Access Control screens and messages are displayed for the user.
D-Net	The abbreviation for Device Controller Network in an AxiomV TM system. A D-Net is a high-speed fault tolerant ring network that may connect up to 4 RC2 controllers and 16 IOC16 controllers to a NC100.
Ethernet	A widely used LAN developed by Xerox, Digital, and Intel.

Ethernet A widely used LAN developed by Xerox, Digital, and Intel. Ethernet networks connect up to 1,024 nodes at 10 megabits per second over twisted pair, coax, and optical fiber.

Flash Memory Semiconductor memory that can operate as ROM, but on an activating signal, can rewrite its contents as though it was RAM. AxiomVTM NC100, RC2 and IOC16 controllers use flash memory.

Holiday Any day on which the regular weekly AxiomVTM Schedule is not appropriate. Statutory holidays and summer shut down periods are two examples. In AxiomVTM, Holidays may be assigned special irregular Schedules that override the regular Schedule for that day.

Input Any field apparatus that provides information to an AxiomVTM system with respect to conditions or status of a monitored component. Examples include door contacts, thermometers etc.

Installer An employee of an RBH Authorized Dealer/Integrator, who installs, configures or services AxiomVTM systems in the field.

IP Address The abbreviation for Internet Protocol address. A 32-bit (4-byte) binary number that uniquely identifies a host computer connected to the Internet to other Internet hosts, for the purposes of communication through the transfer of packets. An IP address is expressed in "dotted quad" format, consisting of the decimal values of its four bytes, separated with periods, for example, 127.0.0.1. The first one, two, or three bytes of the IP address, assigned by InterNIC Registration Services, identify the network the host is connected to; the remaining bits identify the host itself.

- *Keypad* Push-button numeric device used to enter a PIN code or an Access Code.
 - **LED** The abbreviation for Light Emitting Diode.
- **Master NC100** The NC100 controller that occupies the first position in a C-Net network and is connected to the Host PC via a serial or Ethernet connection. Communications from any controller on the C-Net must pass through the Master NC100.
 - **Mustering** An Access Control function that allows an operator to inquire on demand as to the whereabouts of all cardholders in an AxiomVTM system.
 - **NC100** The NC100 is an intelligent communication controller in an AxiomV[™] system. The NC100 manages communications between the PC and Device Controllers, and stores all configuration parameters locally. This allows all AxiomV[™] systems to function fully without the Host PC online.
 - **Operator** Any individual authorized to log-on to the Axiom V^{TM} system for purposes of data-entry or monitoring.
 - **Output** Any field apparatus that receives commands from an AxiomVTM system and executes the action specified in the command. (Examples include door locks, and lights.)
 - **Parallel Port** A parallel port sends data from device to another, in parallel lines (i.e., all bits at one time).
 - **PIN** Personal Identification Number.
 - **RAM** The abbreviation for Random Access Memory. Semiconductorbased memory that can be read and written by the CPU or other hardware devices.
 - **ROM** The abbreviation for Read Only Memory. Any semiconductor circuit serving as a memory that contains instructions or data that can be read but not modified, regardless of whether it was placed there by a manufacturer or by a programming process.

- **RTE** Request to exit.
- **Serial Port** An input/output location (channel) that sends and receives data to and from a computer's central processing unit or a communications device one bit at a time.
 - **Server** The server application software in an AxiomVTM system.
- **Schedule** A Schedule (e.g. Business Hours) is a pre-defined time slot/day combination that may be assigned to Access Points, Inputs, Outputs and Cardholder Modes and Privileges, thereby governing how the AxiomV[™] system operates from day to day.
- **Slave NC100** NC100 controllers that occupy positions 2 through 15 in a C-Net network. Communications between Slave NC100's and the Host PC must pass through the Master NC100.
- SystemThe person responsible for creating, maintaining, and controllingAdministratorthe Axiom V^{TM} Database.
 - **TAPI** Telephony Application Programming Interface. TAPI is a Microsoft[®] Windows' set of functions that allows programming of telephone line-based devices in a device-independent manner, giving personal telephony to users.
 - **TCP/IP** Transfer Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. TCP/IP is the protocol that networks use to communicate with each other on the Internet.

License & Warranty

Notice 1.01

This Software is licensed (not sold). It is licensed to sublicenses, including end-users, without either express or implied warranties of any kind on an "as is" basis. RBH Access Technologies Inc. makes no express or implied warranties to sublicenses, including end-users, with regard to this software, including merchantability, fitness for any purpose or non-infringement of patents, copyrights, or any other proprietary rights of others. RBH Access Technologies Inc. shall not have any liability or responsibility to sublicenses, including end-users for damages of any kind, including special, indirect or consequential damages arising out of or resulting from any program, services or materials made available hereunder or the or the modification thereof.

Notice 1.02

RBH Access Technologies Inc. makes no claim or warranty with respect to the fitness of any product or software for a specific application and assumes no responsibility for installation. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties expressed or implied. No representative or agent of RBH Access Technologies Inc. may make any other claims to the fitness of any product for any application.

Index

A

Abort Delay	230
About This Guide	1
Access Control	19
Access Level	19
Access Levels	
Cardholders	
Elevators	248
Multiple	
Standard	
Access Point	19
Access Point Activity	
Grant Access	
Lock	40
Unlock	40
Access Point Groups45,	177, 242
Configuration	178
Lock	177
Reset Mode	177
Set Mode	177
Unlock	177
Access Points45,	166, 220
Command Buttons	167
Configuration	131, 166
Grant Access	135, 166
Links	227
Lock	135, 166
Mode	168
Monitoring	131, 167
Reset Mode	135, 166
Set Mode	135, 166
Status	132, 167
Types	221
Unlock	135, 166
Acknowledge	
Action Messages	
Action Required	138
Activation Date	262
Active Directory	
Active Toolbar	
Add Buttons - Toolbars	
Advanced Tab - Search Window	
Alarm Details	
Alarm Lockout	223

Alarm Queue
Alarms Monitor38, 146Antipassback19Antipassback Enabled226AP Activity35Apartments45, 173Arm134, 173Circuit Type217Configuration174Disarm134, 173Inputs216Links219Monitoring174Outputs218Status175Zone Type216APBSee AntipassbackAPGSee Access Point GroupsArea21Areas47, 145, 201Arm134, 173Input Groups179Inputs135, 169
Antipassback19Antipassback Enabled226AP Activity35Apartments45, 173Arm134, 173Circuit Type217Configuration174Disarm134, 173Inputs216Links219Monitoring174Outputs218Status175Zone Type216APBSee AntipassbackAPGSee Access Point GroupsArea21Areas47, 145, 201ArmApartments134, 173Input Groups179Inputs135, 169
Antipassback Enabled 226 AP Activity 35 Apartments 45, 173 Arm 134, 173 Circuit Type 217 Configuration 174 Disarm 134, 173 Inputs 216 Links 219 Monitoring 174 Outputs 218 Status 175 Zone Type 216 APB See Antipassback APB See Antipassback APG 21 Area 21 Area 21 Area 21 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
AP Activity 35 Apartments 45, 173 Arm 134, 173 Circuit Type 217 Configuration 174 Disarm 134, 173 Inputs 216 Links 219 Monitoring 174 Outputs 218 Status 175 Zone Type 216 APB See Antipassback APG See Access Point Groups Area 21 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm Apartments 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
Apartments 45, 173 Arm 134, 173 Circuit Type 217 Configuration 174 Disarm 134, 173 Inputs 216 Links 219 Monitoring 174 Outputs 218 Status 175 Zone Type 216 APB See Antipassback APG See Access Point Groups Area 21 Area Antipassback 20 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm Apartments 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
Arm 134, 173 Circuit Type 217 Configuration 174 Disarm 134, 173 Inputs 216 Links 219 Monitoring 174 Outputs 218 Status 175 Zone Type 216 APB See Antipassback APG See Access Point Groups Area 21 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
Circuit Type 217 Configuration 174 Disarm 134, 173 Inputs 216 Links 219 Monitoring 174 Outputs 218 Status 175 Zone Type 216 APB See Antipassback APG See Access Point Groups Area 21 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm 134, 173 Apartments 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
Configuration 174 Disarm 134, 173 Inputs 216 Links 219 Monitoring 174 Outputs 218 Status 175 Zone Type 216 APB See Antipassback APG 216 Area 217 Area Antipassback 20 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm 134, 173 Apartments 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
Disarm 134, 173 Inputs 216 Links 219 Monitoring 174 Outputs 218 Status 175 Zone Type 216 APB See Antipassback APG See Access Point Groups Area 21 Areas 20 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
Disarm 134, 173 Inputs 216 Links 219 Monitoring 174 Outputs 218 Status 175 Zone Type 216 APB See Antipassback APG See Access Point Groups Area 21 Areas 20 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
Inputs 216 Links 219 Monitoring 174 Outputs 218 Status 175 Zone Type 216 APB See Antipassback APG See Access Point Groups Area 21 Areas 20 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
Links 219 Monitoring 174 Outputs 218 Status 175 Zone Type 216 APB See Antipassback APG See Access Point Groups Area 21 Areas 20 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
Outputs. 218 Status 175 Zone Type. 216 APB See Antipassback APG See Access Point Groups Area 21 Area Antipassback 20 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
Outputs. 218 Status 175 Zone Type. 216 APB See Antipassback APG See Access Point Groups Area 21 Area Antipassback 20 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
Status175Zone Type216APBSee AntipassbackAPGSee Access Point GroupsArea21Area Antipassback20Areas47, 145, 201Arm134, 173Input Groups179Inputs135, 169
Zone Type216APBSee AntipassbackAPGSee Access Point GroupsArea21Area Antipassback20Areas47, 145, 201ArmApartmentsApartments134, 173Input Groups179Inputs135, 169
APBSee AntipassbackAPGSee Access Point GroupsArea21Area Antipassback20Areas47, 145, 201ArmApartmentsApartments134, 173Input Groups179Inputs135, 169
APGSee Access Point GroupsArea21Area Antipassback20Areas47, 145, 201Arm47Apartments134, 173Input Groups179Inputs135, 169
Area 21 Area Antipassback 20 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
Area Antipassback 20 Areas 47, 145, 201 Arm 134, 173 Input Groups 179 Inputs 135, 169
Areas
Arm Apartments
Apartments
Input Groups 179 Inputs
Inputs 135, 169
Arrow Symbol
ASCII Message
Asset Detected at Non-Asset Tracking Point 347
Asset Present Time
Asset Programming
Asset Timeout
Asset Tracking
Asset Tracking Normal Operation
Assets
Configuration
Photo
Photo276Auto Backup78Auto Relock221Auto Report314Schedule315Auto Void Cards34, 268
Photo276Auto Backup78Auto Relock221Auto Report314Schedule315Auto Void Cards34, 268Auto-Backup Configuration78
Photo276Auto Backup78Auto Relock221Auto Report314Schedule315Auto Void Cards34, 268

RBH Access Technologies Inc.

IOC16	
RC2	
AxiomLinks	
Command Summary	
Commands	
AxiomV On The Web	

<u>B</u>

Backup	74
Badge	
Badge Templates	
Badging Template Designer	60
Bar Code Field	
Battery Test	
IOC16	164
RC2	
Battery Test Interval	
Before Installing AxiomV	7
Before reading this guide	1
Before You Install AxiomV	
Bomb Symbol	2
Box	
Check	13
List	13
Browse Button	12
Button	
Browse	12
Radio	13
Buttons	
Push	
Spin	
*	

<u>C</u>

Camera1	44
Camera Number	42
Cameras	32
Capture Signature	73
Card Dump1	
Card Export Utility1	
Card Holder Picture Size	
Card Import Utility	86
MS Access Database Format	93
SQL Database Format1	01
Text Format	
Card Search	40
Card Size2	09
Cardholder49, 2	55

Access Level	
Card Type	
Cardholder Reader Report	
Cardholder Report	
Code Links Tab	
Company Tab	
Extended Unlock	
Multiple Access Levels	
Options Tab	
Personal Tab	
Photo Tab271	
Reader Access Update	
Special Access Levels	
Vacation	
Cardholder Groups	
Cardholder Reader Access Update	
Cardholder Reader Report	
Cardholder Screen	
Cardholder Type	
Cardholder Types	
Cards145	
Cards Monitor	
Carry Forward	
Change Password	
Channel Monitor time	
Check Box	
Check In	
Check Out	
Circuit Type	
Apartments	
Inputs	
Clear	
Alarms	
Clear Log	
Clear Memory	
Client - PC Requirements	
Client Screen	
C-NET See Controller Network	
C-Net Parameters	
Code Reader Links	
Code Tracing	
Command Buttons	
Access Points	
Inputs	
IOC16	
NC100	
Outputs	
RC2	
Commands	
AxiomLinks	
Operators	
i	

Commands Toolbar57, 151
Companies
Concepts19
Configuration
Access Point Groups178
Access Points131, 166
Alarms149
Apartments174
Assets
Device Controllers161
Guard Tours181
Input Groups179
Inputs169
NC100159
Networks154
Output Groups180
Outputs171
Configure Auto-Backup78
Connection Types
Controller Network
Conventions in this guide2
Copy Card257
Copy Cardholder257
Copy Wizard
Copyright ii
Counter Value
Cross-references
Ctrl+L See Log In & Log Off
Custom Database Fields
Custom Fields
Custom Report Designer
Customize Report
Customize Toolbar
Customize 1001001124

<u>D</u>

Daily Reports	309
Data Entry	12
Database	46, 184
Database Reports	119, 318
General Tab	
Readers Tab	
Sorting Tab	
Date Field	13
Day Light Savings Time	208
Dazzle90 Photo Capture Device	32
Deactivation Date	
Deduct Usage	225
Default	134, 174
Departments	49, 251

Device Controllers	44, 161
Configuration	161
Test Battery	133, 161
Version	161
Device Firmware Upgrade	158
Device Groups	
Device Network	
DHO Alarm	
DHO Warning	
Direct Connection	22
Disable DHO Warning	
Disable Request to Exit	
Disabled Forced Entry	
Disarm	
Apartments	134, 173
Input Groups	179
Inputs	135, 169
Disarm Schedule - Inputs	
Display Settings	57
Display Table	
D-NET See Devic	e Network
D-Net CH1 or CH2	
IOC16	
RC2	
D-Net Errors	133, 156
D-Net Protocol	
D-Net Retries	
Do Not Initialize The Panels	
Door Held Oepn	.See DHO
Download	156
Duplex Badge Printing	
Duplicate Card	
DVR	, 142, 302
DVR Server IP Address	

E

Elevator	
Elevators	48, 239, 248
Entering Area	
Escort Required	
Ethernet Connection	22
Event Blocking	
Event History Reports	
Events Viewer	. 18, 37, 129
Exit	
Exiting Area	
Extended Unlock	
Extended Unlock Time	
External Tools	115

F

Facility Code Fall Back225	
Facility Codes)
Field	
Date	
Field Properties	,
File	
Finger Print Reader Query49	,
Finger Print Reader Query	
Finger Print Readers	
Finger Print Readers	
Fire Signal	
IOC16165	
RC2	
Firmware Upgrade	
Devices	
NC100157	
Firmware Version	
IOC16164	
NC100160	
RC2162	
First Person Delay	
Floor Groups	
Fonts - Reports	
Forced Arm	
Forced Arm Alarm	
Freeze Column	
110020 Column	

<u>G</u>

General Screen Operations	13
General Tab	
Database Reports	
History Reports	
Search Window	15
Get Date/Time	
Getting to Know AxiomV	12
Global Antipassback	20
Global Commands	50, 140, 295
Grace Period	
Grant Access	
Access Point Activity	
Access Points	
Gridlines	
Guard Groups	
Guard Tour	50, 303, 306
Guard Tours	45, 50, 181

Hand Symbol	2
Hard Antipassback	
Hard Antipassback Operation Schedule	
Hardware Setup	
Help	
About	
Contents	
Index	121
Technical Support	
Hide Column	
High Security	
History Duration	
History Playback	
History Purge	
History Reports	
General Tab	
Messages tab	
Save Tab	
Sorting Tab	
History Settings	
Holiday Designation	
Holidays	
	, . ,

Ī

Icons	141
Ignore Antipassback	
Ignore Auto Void	
Ignore High Security	
Image Field	
Import in Map Maker	
In/Out Reader	
Initialize	
Input Groups	45, 179, 243
Arm	
Configuration	
Disarm	
Input Type Defaulted	
Input/Output Controller	
Input/Output Controllers	
Inputs	
Apartments	
Arm	
Circuit Type	
Command Buttons	
Configuration	
Disarm	
Disarm Schedule	

Links
Monitoring
Status170
Installing AxiomV on Your Computer8
Instruction Messages
Instruction Schedule
Interlock Groups
Introducing AxiomV4
IOC16See Input/Output Controller
Auxiliary Fuse165
Battery Test164
Command Buttons164
D-Net CH1 or CH2165
Fire Signal165
Firmware Version164
Properties212
Status
IOC16 Firmware Upgrade158
Issue Level

<u>K</u>

Keyboard Timeout	29
Keypad Properties	
Keypads	

L

LAN Communications	8
Large <u>I</u> cons	
License Registration	
Links	
Access Points	227
Apartments	
Inputs	
Outputs	
List Box	13
Lock	
Access Point Activity	40
Access Point Groups	177
Access Points	
Lock Alarms Monitor Window	
Log if Door Open	
Log In	
Log Off	
Log Size	
Log Sounds	

M

Magnetic Encoder Setup
Map Maker
Map Queue
Maps Display
Maximum Events
Menu Animation
Menus
Message Messages
Message Ports
Messages
Messages Tab - History reports
Mode - Access Points
Module Selector
Monitoring137
Access Points
Alarms
Apartments174
Inputs 169
Networks154
Outputs171
Monitoring Schedule
Monitoring Security Access
MultiCards
Multiple Access Levels
Cardholder
Multiple Credentials

N

Name Field	12
NationalID	
Navigation Objects	12
NC100 44, 156, See Network	Controller
Command Buttons	160
Configuration	159
Firmware Upgrade	157
Firmware Version	160
Properties	
Status	159
Version	132, 156
Network Controller	22, 210
Network Properties	
Network Timeout	
Networks	154, 205
Non Reader Access Points	
IO Configuration	
Links	
NRC	

Number & Name Object	12
Number Field	

<u>0</u>

Object	
Search	
Offline Operation Enabled	
On Schedule	
On State	
Operator Profiles	
Operators	
Cardholders	
Commands	
Devices	
Modules	
System Messages	
Options Tab - Cardholder	
Output Groups	45, 180, 244
Configuration	
Turn On/Off	
Output Type Defaulted	
Outputs	45, 171, 232
Apartments	
Command Buttons	
Configuration	
Links	
Monitoring	171
Status	
Turn On/Off	

<u>P</u>

Pause Alarms149Pause Display130, 132PC Comm Parameters207PC Decision Required222PC Requirements
Server
PC Requirements
PC Requirements
Client7
Pencil Symbol2
Pending Commands
Period - Auto Report
Period - Auto Report
Permanent Commands17

Cardholder	271
PIN Code	262
Poll Rate	207
Port Properties	206
Port Type	
Post Event Time	
Pre Event Time	143
Print Area Muster Report on This Client	34
Properties	
Access Points	220
Inputs	229
IOC16	212
Keypad	214
NC100	
Non Reader Access Point	236
Output	232
RC2	211
PTZ Camera	142
Push Buttons	13

<u>Q</u>

Queues	29
--------	----

<u>R</u>

Radio Button13
RC Stand Alone Mode225
RC2See Reader Controller
Auxiliary Fuse163
Battery Test162
Command Buttons162
D-Net CH1 or CH2163
Fire Signal163
Firmware Version162
Properties211
Status
RC2 Firmware Upgrade158
Reader Access
Reader Antipassback
Reader Cardholder Report
Reader Controller
Reader Controllers
Reader Formats
Reader Fuse
Reader Options
Readers Tab - Database Reports
Receipt
Refresh

Remove Buttons - Toolbars	
Removing AxiomV from Your Comput	
Report Designer	
Report Door Not Open	
Report Scheduler	
Report Server	
Report Unknown Format	
Reports	
Database	
Fonts	317
History	307
Require Card and PIN	225
Required PC Decision	222
Reset Mode	
Access Point Groups	177
Access Points	
Reset Toolbar	85
Restore	81
Restrict Duplicate Card PIN	33
Retries	223
Reverse Data	225
Row Height	
RTE Bypass DC	222

<u>S</u>

SafeSuite	45
Sample Report	
Save Tab - History Reports	
Schedule - Auto Report	
Schedule Inquiry	133, 158
Schedule Tips	198
Schedules	.23, 47, 196
Search Object	
Search Window	15
Advanced Tab	16
General Tab	15
Semi-Permanent Commands	17
Send ASCII	132, 149
Send Cleared Alarms To Message Po	rt34
Send Message	134, 174
Server - PC Requirements	
Set Counter	171
Set Date/Time	133, 156
Set Mode	
Access Point Groups	177
Access Points	135, 166
Show All	130
Signature	
Single View	

Slave Check In Time	
Soft Antipassback	20
Sort	
Sorting Tab	
Database Reports	
History Reports	
Sounds	
Special Access Levels - Cardholder	260, 262
Spin Buttons	
SQL Server Agent	
Standard Access Levels	
Start Tour	
Status	
Access Points	132, 167
Alarms	
Apartments	
Guard Tours	
Inputs	170
IOC16	164
NC100	159
Outputs	172
RC2	
Status Bar	37, 129
Stealth Mode	
Suspend Tour	
Symbol	
Arrow	2
Bomb	2
Hand	2
Pencil	2
System Settings	
System Status	
System Status Display	
System Status Pane	

T

Technical Support	
Templates	
Test Battery - Device Controllers	133, 161
Time Groups	
Time Zone Difference	
Timed Antipassback	
Timed Commands	17
Toolbars	30, 124
Add Buttons	
Remove Buttons	
Tools	51
touch-screen	
Tour Route	

Tour Routes	50
Trace This Card	
Track Visitor	282, 286
Turn On/Off	
Output Groups	180
Outputs	
Two Person	226
Types	
Access Points	221
Outputs	

U

UC100 Firmware Upgrade	158
Unacknowledge	147
Unfreeze All	130
Unlock	
Access Point Activity	40
Access Point Groups	177
Access Points	.135, 166
Unlock Schedule	222
Unlock Time	223
Upgrading AxiomV	8
Usage Count	
Use Cardholder Initials Field As	34

V

Vacation - Cardholder
Device Controllers
NC100132, 156
View
Visitor
Assets
Company
Custom Fields
General
Photo
Tracking
Visitor Management
Visitors
Visitors
Void Cards

<u>Z</u>

Zone Type - Apartments
